

# Stochastic Processes

Jacob Denson

October 30, 2017

# Table Of Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Discrete Time Stochastic Processes</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Finite Markov Chains</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Asymptotics of Markov chains . . . . .	8
1.2	Irreducibility . . . . .	9
1.3	Irreducibility and Potential Functions . . . . .	10
1.4	Existence of a Stationary Distribution . . . . .	11
1.5	Perron-Frobenius . . . . .	14
1.6	Aperiodicity and Irreducibility . . . . .	18
1.7	Periodicity and Average State Distributions . . . . .	20
1.8	Stopping Times . . . . .	22
<b>2</b>	<b>Countable-State Markov Chains</b>	<b>27</b>
2.1	General Properties . . . . .	27
2.2	Recurrence and Transience . . . . .	27
<b>3</b>	<b>Harmonic Functions</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Branching Processes</b>	<b>33</b>
4.1	The Distribution of the $n$ 'th Generation . . . . .	34
4.2	Mean Population Size . . . . .	35
4.3	Probability of Extinction . . . . .	36
4.4	Martingales and Branching Asymptotics . . . . .	39
<b>5</b>	<b>Reversibility</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Discrete Time Martingales</b>	<b>48</b>
6.1	Filtrations . . . . .	48
6.2	Martingales . . . . .	49

6.3	Optional Stopping Theorem . . . . .	51
6.4	Martingale Convergence Theorems . . . . .	60
6.5	Martingale Inequalities . . . . .	67
6.6	Martingales in $L^2(\Omega)$ . . . . .	74
6.7	Optional Sampling Theorem . . . . .	78
<b>II</b>	<b>Continuous Time Stochastic Processes</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Continuous Time Regularity</b>	<b>84</b>
7.1	Regularity of Martingales . . . . .	88
7.2	Regularization of Brownian Motion and the Markov Property	93
7.3	Kolmogorov's Continuity Criterion . . . . .	95
<b>8</b>	<b>Continuous Time Martingales</b>	<b>96</b>
8.1	Continuous Time Convergence Theorems . . . . .	96
8.2	Stopping Times . . . . .	98
<b>9</b>	<b>Continuous Time Markov Processes</b>	<b>100</b>
9.1	Poisson Processes . . . . .	100
9.2	Continuous Time Markov Process . . . . .	102
9.3	Birth and Death Processes . . . . .	105
<b>10</b>	<b>Brownian Motion</b>	<b>108</b>
10.1	Construction of Brownian Motion . . . . .	108
10.2	Basic Properties . . . . .	110
10.3	Brownian Motion is a Markov Process . . . . .	113
<b>11</b>	<b>Stochastic Calculus</b>	<b>115</b>
11.1	Previsibility . . . . .	116
11.2	Finite Variation Processes . . . . .	118
11.3	Localization . . . . .	119
<b>12</b>	<b>Appendix: Conditional Expectations</b>	<b>121</b>
12.1	Classical Conditioning . . . . .	122
12.2	Kolmogorov's Realization . . . . .	123
12.3	General Conditional Expectations . . . . .	125
12.4	Properties of the Conditioning Operator . . . . .	127
12.5	Conditional Probabilities . . . . .	130

12.6 Independence and Conditional Expectation . . . . .	133
<b>13 Appendix: Uniform Integrability</b>	<b>135</b>

The theory of dynamical systems allows us to determine the motions of objects under deterministic actions. In Newton's mechanics, past and future events can be predicted exactly from the position and velocity of all objects at a particular point in time. In reality, one can never measure the data required to determine the state of a system in precision. Inexactness shrouds the determinism of a system, which invalidates the application of Newton's model. Stochastic processes are the probabilistic variant of dynamical systems. Rather than a deterministic rule determining the evolution of a state over time, a stochastic rule is employed leading to a randomized state over time. Formally, a **stochastic process** is a collection  $\{X_t\}$  of random variables defined over the same probability space  $\Omega$ , with range in the same **state space**  $S$ , indexed over some linearly ordered set  $T$ . The theory of stochastic processes is devoted to constructing and studying the various stochastic processes which occur in pure mathematics and the sciences.

**Example.** *To model the uncertainty of weather, we may take a stochastic process with state space  $S = \{\text{sunny}, \text{rainy}\}$ . For  $n \in \mathbf{N}$ , we may model the weather by a random variable  $X_n$  modelling the weather on a certain day  $n$ . Then  $\{X_n : n \in \mathbf{N}\}$  is a stochastic process.*

**Example.** *To model how the value of stocks change over time, we take  $S$  to be the real numbers, and let  $X_t$  be the value of a certain stock at time  $t$ , for  $t \in [0, \infty)$ . This is a continuous time random process, because the values are indexed over time, and the states are also continuous.*

**Example.** *To estimate the cumulative density function of an independent and identically distributed sample  $X_1, \dots, X_n \sim F$ , we can take the estimate*

$$\hat{F}(t) = \frac{\sum \mathbf{I}[X_i \leq t]}{n}$$

*For a fixed  $t \in \mathbf{R}$ ,  $\hat{F}(t)$  is a random variable, and considering  $t$  as the time variable lets us view  $\hat{F}$  as a stochastic process.*

There are two main ways of thinking about stochastic processes. On one hand, fixing  $t$ , we can think of each  $X_t$  as an individual random variable, and then use classical methods such as expectation and convergence theorems to understand how the variables  $X_t$  behave over time. The other way of studying the process is to fix  $\omega$ , and to think of the process as a

random trajectory  $X_t(\omega)$  changing over time. Taken to its extreme, we can view stochastic processes as a  $S^T$  valued random variable. This is most powerful in the study of continuous time stochastic processes, where we can think of a stochastic process as a random curve in space.

Every problem in probability theory involving collections of random variables can be formulated as a statement about stochastic processes. The right application of the theory of stochastic processes may shed a different light to a problem, giving an intuitive perspective to the problem. On the other hand, we can't say much about stochastic processes in general, because of how widely they can be applied. The fun of stochastic processes results when we add additional relationships between the random variables. So let's get to it!

**Part I**

**Discrete Time Stochastic  
Processes**

# Chapter 1

## Finite Markov Chains

By the beginning of the 20th century, the work of the Poisson, Chebyshev, and the Bernoulli brothers had cemented the law of large numbers in mathematical culture. Given a number of independent and identically distributed random variables, well behaved asymptotic behaviour of the mean is guaranteed. It took the genius of Markov to realize that one can derive similar results for random variables which are not independent, nor distributed identically, but follow well behaved rules that exhibit asymptotic behaviour in the long run.

Markov had a strong and abrasive relationship with his colleagues. This extended beyond his professional life to the revolutionary atmosphere of 20th century Russia. When Leo Tolstoy was excommunicated from the Orthodox church, Markov requested that he too be excommunicated in solidarity. Markov's acrimony was most strongly directed towards his mathematical rival, Pavel Nekrasov, who had attempted to apply probability theory (rather loosely) to philosophical arguments. Nekrasov compared acts of free will to independent events. Since crime statistics obey the law of large numbers, this data should imply that human decisions are independent events – ergo, human free-will exists. What Nekrasov had assumed was that the law of large numbers only applies to independent events. Nekrasov had not committed an isolated mistake in applying this principle – mathematicians back to the Bernoullis had made the mistake. Markov's vitriol towards Nekrasov gave him the motivation to disprove this principle. He introduced Markov chains, families of dependant random events which still have a well defined law of large numbers.

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be a discrete time stochastic process, with a discrete, at



most countable state space. This process satisfies the **discrete Markov property** if, for any  $n$ , and for any states  $x_1, \dots, x_n, x_{n+1}$ ,

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{n+1} = x_{n+1} | X_n = x_n, \dots, X_1 = x_1) = \mathbf{P}(X_{n+1} = x_{n+1} | X_n = x_n)$$

A **Markov chain** is a stochastic process satisfying the Markov property. In the theory of Newtonian mechanics, if we know the position and velocity of a particle at any single point in time, we can predict all past and future motion. The Markov property is a stochastic equivalent to this. We might not predict the future from the present, but we can gain as much information as possible from the present about the future, and we don't need to worry about the past.

**Example.** All independent families of random variables  $\{X_t\}$  satisfy the Markov property, since we cannot learn anything from previous results,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = y | X_{t_n} = x_n, \dots, X_{t_1} = x_1) &= \mathbf{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = y) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = y | X_{t_n} = x_n) \end{aligned}$$

*Independent processes are the least interesting example of a Markov process.*

**Example.** If  $\{X_i\}_{i \in \mathbf{Z}}$  is any stochastic process, we can create a Markov chain by 'memorizing' previous states of the system. We define  $Y_k = (X_0, \dots, X_k)$ . Then one may verify that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(Y_{n+1} = (x_{n+1}, \dots, x_0) | Y_n = (x_0, \dots, x_n), Y_{n-1} = (x_0, \dots, x_{n-1}), \dots, Y_0 = x_0) \\ = \mathbf{P}(Y_{n+1} = (x_{n+1}, \dots, x_0) | Y_n = (x_0, \dots, x_n)) \end{aligned}$$

*This shows that  $\{Y_k\}$  satisfies the Markov property, so one can always keep a copy of the past in the present so that we don't need to 'look back' to remember what happened.*

For any three random variables  $X, Y, Z$  mapping into a discrete state space, we find

$$\mathbf{P}(X = x | Z = z) = \sum_y \mathbf{P}(X = x | Y = y, Z = z) \mathbf{P}(Y = y | Z = z)$$

If  $i < j < k$ , then in a Markov chain we may write

$$\mathbf{P}(X_k = x | X_i = z) = \sum_y \mathbf{P}(X_k = x | X_j = y) \mathbf{P}(X_j = y | X_i = z)$$

This is the **Chapman-Kolmogorov equation**, relating various transition probabilities of a markov chain. If we know  $\mu_0(x) = \mathbf{P}(X_0 = x)$  and transition probability functions  $p_k(x, y) = \mathbf{P}(X_{k+1} = y | X_k = x)$ , then it is possible to calculate the probability distribution of  $X_n$  for every  $n$ . Conversely, given some  $\mu_0$  and  $p_k$ , we can always find a Markov chain  $X_0, X_1, \dots$  with these functions at the initial distribution and transition function (We can just consider a sample space  $S^{\mathbf{N}}$  where  $X_i(x) = x_i$  and such that

$$\mathbf{P}(\emptyset) = 0 \quad \mathbf{P}(x_0 \times S^{\mathbf{N}-\{0\}}) = \mu_0(x_0)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(x_0, \dots, x_n \times S^{\mathbf{N}-[n]}) = \mathbf{P}(x_0, \dots, x_n) p_{n-1}(x_{n-1}, x_n)$$

Then  $\mathbf{P}$  is a probability measure on  $2^{[n]} \times S^{\mathbf{N}-[n]}$  for each integer  $n$ , assuming that  $\mu_0$  is a probability measure, and  $p_n(x, \cdot)$  is a probability measure for each state  $x$ . Then  $\mathbf{P}$  is defined on a ring of sets, since the family is certainly closed under a pairwise intersection, and

$$A \times S^{\mathbf{N}-[n]} - B \times S^{\mathbf{N}-[n]} = (A - B) \times S^{\mathbf{N}-[n]}$$

and  $\mathbf{P}$  certainly satisfies countable additivity, so the Caratheodory extension theorem guarantees that  $\mathbf{P}$  extends uniquely to a measure on the  $\sigma$  algebra generated by the subsets in question. The random variables are obviously measurable, and it is easy to verify the Markov property.

The nicest theory of Markov chains occurs when we assume the chain is ‘time homogenous’. A Markov chain is **time homogenous** if we can specify the transition probabilities such that  $p(x, y) = p_n(x, y)$  does not depend on  $n$ . We shall find that the best way to understand time homogenous chains is to vary the initial probability distribution  $\mu_0$  and studying how the chain varies. The main mechanism to this analysis is to view the transition probabilities as an operator on the space of all initial distributions (a convex subset of the Banach space  $l_1(S)$  of summable functions on  $S$ ). Studying the distributions of time-homogenous chains on a finite state space reduces to operator theory, and in the finite dimensional case, matrix algebra.

Let us define the transition operator  $P$  by the formula

$$(\mu P)(y) = \sum \mu(x) p(x, y)$$

Thus  $P$  takes a probability distribution over states to the probabilities of states one step into the future. In general, this means that  $\mu P^n$  gives the

probability distribution  $n$  steps into the future (this is formally verified by the Chapman-Kolmogorov equations). If the state space is finite, then  $\mu$  can be viewed as a row vector, and then  $P$  as a finite dimensional matrix with  $P_{xy} = p(x, y)$ . Then  $\mu P$  can be literally interpreted as matrix multiplication.  $P$  is an example of a **stochastic matrix**, a matrix whose rows sum to one. Any such matrix with these rows specifies the transition probabilities of a time-homogenous Markov chain.

The space of probability distributions can be viewed in some way as functionals on the vector space  $\mathbf{R}^S$  of real functions on  $S$ . Given a distribution  $\mu$  and function  $f$ , we can define  $\mathbf{E}_\mu(f) = \sum \mu(x)f(x)$ , which is the expected value of  $f$  one step into the future given that we start at the initial distribution  $\mu$ . In particular, we let  $\mathbf{E}_x$  denote the expectation with respect to the initial distribution concentrated at  $x$  with probability one. Since  $P$  acts on the right in the family of probability distributions, we should have a natural operator on the family of functions on  $S$ , with

$$(Pf)(x) = \sum_y P(x, y)f(y) = \mathbf{E}[f(X_{n+1})|X_n = x]$$

Given a function  $f$ , the formal calculation

$$\mathbf{E}_{\mu P}(f) = \sum (\mu P)(x)f(x) = \sum \mu(x)P(x, y)f(y) = \mathbf{E}_\mu(Pf)$$

verifies that  $P$  really does act like a dual operator.

**Example.** *It is a useful simplification to assume that the transition between states of weather from one day to the next is time-homogenous. After collecting data in a particular region, we might choose a transition matrix like the one below*

$$\begin{array}{cc} & \begin{array}{cc} \text{sunny} & \text{rainy} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{sunny} \\ \text{rainy} \end{array} & \left[ \begin{array}{cc} 0.6 & 0.4 \\ 0.8 & 0.2 \end{array} \right] \end{array}$$

*Thus there is a 60% chance of it being rainy the day after it is sunny, and an 80% change of it being sunny the day after it is rainy. We will find that, in the long run, the days will be sunny about 57% of the time, and rainy 43% of the time.*

**Example.** *Consider a queueing system (for a phone-hold system, etc.) which can only hold 2 people at once. Every time epoch, there is a certain chance  $p$*

that a new caller will attempt to access the system, and a chance  $q$  that we will finish with a person in the queue. Assuming these events are independent, we can model this as a time homogenous markov process with transition matrix

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccc} & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \left[ \begin{array}{ccc} 1-p & p & 0 \\ (1-p)q & (1-q)(1-p)+pq & p(1-q) \\ 0 & q(1-p) & (1-q)+pq \end{array} \right] \end{array} \end{array}$$

Given a large amount of time, it is of interest to the maker of the queuing system to know the average number of people in the queue at a certain time. This leads to the study of asymptotics of Markov chains, of which we will soon find a complete characterization.

**Example.** Consider a random walk on a graph. This means that at each vertex, we have an equal chance of moving from one vertex to any other vertex connected by an edge. The simplest example of such a process is the random walk on the vertices  $\{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ , where each integer is connected to adjacent integers. The transition probabilities are given by

$$P(i, i+1) = P(i, i-1) = \frac{1}{2} \quad i \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$$

$$P(0, 1) = P(n, n-1) = 1$$

If one connects the end vertices to themselves, then one obtains another form of the random walk. The former is known as the reflecting random walk, and the latter the partially reflecting.

## 1.1 Asymptotics of Markov chains

As was Markov's goal, we want to determine the asymptotic behaviour of a Markov chain  $\{X_i\}$  after large lengths of time. In most cases, we will show the chains  $X_i$  converge in distribution, or at least that the averages  $n^{-1}(X_1 + \dots + X_n)$  converge in distribution.

**Example.** Consider a homogenous process with the transition matrix

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 3/4 & 1/4 \\ 1/6 & 5/6 \end{pmatrix}$$

We may write  $P = QDQ^{-1}$ , where

$$Q = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 7/12 \end{pmatrix} \quad Q^{-1} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P^n &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (QDQ^{-1})^n = Q(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} D^n)Q^{-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{10} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2/5 & 3/5 \\ 2/5 & 3/5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Regardless of the initial distribution of the markov chain,  $\mu_0 P^n \rightarrow (2/5, 3/5)$ , so the asymptotics are well defined.

Some initial distributions work very nicely when taking limits of the stochastic matrix: Suppose  $\mu$  is a left eigenvector of  $P$  ( $\mu P = \mu$ ). Then  $\mu P^n = \mu$ , and so, taking  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we find  $\mu$  is the limiting distribution of the Markov chain it generates. One can check that  $(2/5, 3/5)$  is a left eigenvector for the probability matrix in the last example. If all initial distribution converge to the same value, then they must converge to this distribution. Identifying these vectors therefore seems important in order to identify the limiting distribution of the matrix. An **invariant**, or **stationary probability distribution** for  $P$  is a probability distribution  $\mu$  such that  $\mu P = \mu$ . We will show that a large class of stochastic processes have a unique invariant probability density, which represents the ‘average’ time spent in each state, and assuming a slightly stronger condition, the distribution on the states converges to the distribution.

## 1.2 Irreducibility

Let  $x$  and  $y$  be two states. We say  $x$  **communicates** with  $y$  if there is some  $n$  with  $P_{xy}^n > 0$ . If we divide the states of a process into equivalence classes of states, all of which communicate between one another, then we obtain a family of **communication classes** for the stochastic process. A Markov chain with one communication class is **irreducible**. We can further classify the communication classes of a reducible markov chain by looking at one-sided communication. A state  $x$  may communicate with a state  $y$  without the converse being true. A communication class which only communicates with itself is know as **recurrent** whereas if a communication class

communicates with other classes, it is known as **transient**. By reordering the entries of  $P$ , we may assume the states in the same communication class occur contiguously, and that all the recurrent communication classes occur before the transient classes. We can then write

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} P_1 & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & P_n & \\ S_1 & & & Q \end{pmatrix}$$

where each  $P_i$  is a stochastic matrix over a particular recurrent class. For any  $m$ ,

$$P^m = \begin{pmatrix} P_1^m & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & P_n^m & \\ S_m & & & Q^m \end{pmatrix}$$

Each  $P_i$  acts as it's own 'sub Markov process', which we can analyze on their own, and then put them together to understand the full Markov process.

We claim that  $Q^m \rightarrow 0$  as  $Q$  tends to  $\infty$ . This means exactly that transient states almost surely enter recurrent states over time. if  $U$  is the set of transient states on a Markov process, then  $\mathbf{P}(X_k \in U) \rightarrow 0$  (this is the limit of the probability of a decreasing family of sets, so the limit certainly exists). Since our state space is infinite, there is  $\varepsilon > 0$  and  $n$  such that for any state  $x \in U$ , there is  $0 \leq n \leq m$  and some recurrent state  $y$  such that  $P^n(x, y) > \varepsilon$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(X_{(n+1)m} \in U) &= \mathbf{P}(X_{nm} \in U) - \mathbf{P}(X \text{ leaves } U \text{ on } (nm, (n+1)m]) \\ &\leq (1 - \varepsilon) \mathbf{P}(X_{nm} \in U) \end{aligned}$$

So  $\mathbf{P}(X_{nm} \in U) \leq (1 - \varepsilon)^n$ , which converges to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

### 1.3 Irreducibility and Potential Functions

There is a one-to-one correspondence between left eigenvectors of  $P$  and right eigenvectors of  $P$ . We shall determine the uniqueness of invariant probabilities by analyzing the right eigenvectors. Strangely, the proof

mimics the analysis of harmonic functions on Euclidean space. We say a function  $f$  is **harmonic** if  $Pf = f$ . This can be interpreted as saying the average value of  $f$  beginning from a particular state is equal to the value at the state itself.

**Lemma 1.1.** *A harmonic function on an irreducible markov chain is constant.*

*Proof.* Let  $s^*$  be a state maximizing a harmonic function  $f$ . If  $P(s^*, s) > 0$ , then it cannot be true that  $f(s) < f(s^*)$ , for then

$$\begin{aligned} f(s^*) &= Pf(s^*) = \sum_x P(s^*, x)f(x) = \sum_{x \neq s} P(s^*, x)f(x) + P(s^*, s)f(s) \\ &\leq (1 - P(s^*, s))f(s^*) + P(s^*, s)f(s) < f(s^*) \end{aligned}$$

This implies  $f(s) = f(s^*)$ . Furthermore, it implies that the function must be constant on the communication class of  $s^*$ . In particular, since an irreducible markov chain consists of one connected component,  $f$  must be constant.  $\square$

**Corollary 1.2.** *Invariant probability vector for irreducible processes are unique if they exist.*

*Proof.* The space of harmonic functions on an irreducible process is one dimensional, which implies that the space of left eigenvectors for the transition matrix is also one dimensional. This means that there is at most one eigenvector of eigenvalue one with non-negative entries whose entries sum to one.  $\square$

The theorem above is an analogy of the maximum modulus principle for harmonic functions – which states that, if a function attains its maximum value on an open set, the function must be constant on the connected component upon which it is defined. Classically, electromagnetics modelled the electrical potential in space by such a harmonic function. In the continuous case, the charge distributes itself across the entire space. In the discrete finite case, the electric potential must occur at one of the points where the electricity flows, so the flow must be constant throughout.

## 1.4 Existence of a Stationary Distribution

Given a state  $x$  on a Markov process  $X_0, X_1, \dots$ , define a random variable  $\tau_x = \min\{t \geq 0 : X_t = x\}$ , and  $\tau_x^+ = \min\{t > 0 : X_t = x\}$ .  $\tau$  is known as the **hitting time** of the state  $x$ . If  $X_0 = x$ , then we call  $\tau_x^+$  the **first return time**.

**Lemma 1.3.** *For any two states  $x$  and  $y$  on an irreducible chain,  $\mathbf{E}_x(\tau_y^+) < \infty$ .*

*Proof.* Because we are working on a finite state space, there is an integer  $n$  and  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that for any two states  $x$  and  $y$ , there is  $m \leq n$  with  $P_n(x, y) > \varepsilon$ . Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > kn) &= \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > (k-1)n) - \mathbf{P}_x((k-1)n \leq \tau_y^+ < kn) \\ &\leq (1 - \varepsilon) \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > (k-1)n) \end{aligned}$$

so we conclude  $\mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > kn) \leq (1 - \varepsilon)^n$ , so

$$\mathbf{E}_x(\tau_y^+) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > k) \leq n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_y^+ > kn) \leq n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (1 - \varepsilon)^k < \infty$$

and thus the expected value is finite.  $\square$

We will soon see that on irreducible Markov chains, there is a unique invariant probability distribution  $\mu_*$ , and for any initial distribution  $\mu$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^n \mathbf{P}_\mu(X_k = x) = \mu_*(x)$$

which is the long term chance of going to  $x$ . The intuition is that if we start at  $x$ , and let  $\tau_x^n = \min\{k > \tau_x^{n-1} : X_k = x\}$  denote the  $n$ 'th return time to  $x$ , with  $\tau_x^0 = 0$ . Then the  $\tau_x^{n+1} - \tau_x^n$  are intuitively i.i.d random variables with mean  $\mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$ , so the strong law of large numbers guarantees that almost surely,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\tau_x^n}{n} = \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$$

So pointwise, we find  $\tau_x^n \approx n \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$ , implying that we visit  $x$   $n$  times in time roughly proportional to  $n \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$ . But the theorem we desire says that in  $m$  steps we visit  $x$   $m \mu_*(x)$  times. Setting  $m = n \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$  gives  $n = n \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+] \mu^*(x)$ , so we conclude that  $\mu^*(x) = \mathbf{E}_x[\tau_x^+]^{-1}$ . Though this is a heuristic argument, we will show that the measure  $\mu^*(x) = \mathbf{E}_x[\tau_x^+]^{-1}$  is actually an invariant measure, which we will soon show is unique.

**Theorem 1.4.** *Every irreducible chain has an invariant probability measure.*



*Proof.* Let  $x$  denote an arbitrary state of the chain. Define

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\pi}(y) &= \mathbf{E}_x(\text{number of visits to } y \text{ before returning to } x) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}_x(X_k = y, \tau_x^+ > k)\end{aligned}$$

Then  $\tilde{\pi}(y) \leq \mathbf{E}(\tau_x^+) < \infty$ . We claim  $\tilde{\pi}$  is stationary. For a fixed  $y$ ,

$$\sum_z \tilde{\pi}(z)P(z, y) = \sum_z \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(X_k = z, \tau_x^+ > k)P(z, y)$$

Now by the Markov property, because the event  $\{\tau_x^+ > k\}$  is determined by  $X_0, \dots, X_k$ , one can use conditional probabilities to show

$$\mathbf{P}_x(X_k = z, X_{k+1} = y, \tau_x^+ > k) = \mathbf{P}_x(X_k = z, \tau_x^+ > k)P(z, y)$$

so interchanging the summation, we find

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_z \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(X_k = z, \tau_x^+ > k)P(z, y) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(X_{k+1} = y, \tau_x^+ > k) \\ &= \tilde{\pi}(y) - \mathbf{P}_x(X_0 = y, \tau_x^+ > 0) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}_x(X_k = y, \tau_x^+ = k) \\ &= \tilde{\pi}(y) - \mathbf{P}_x(X_0 = y, \tau_x^+ > 0) + \mathbf{P}(X_{\tau_x^+} = y) = \tilde{\pi}(y)\end{aligned}$$

which is easily seen regardless of whether  $x = y$  or  $x \neq y$ . Normalizing  $\tilde{\pi}$  by

$$\sum \tilde{\pi}(y) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}_x(\tau_x^+ > k) = \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]$$

Since  $\tilde{\pi}(x) = 1$ , we conclude  $\pi(x) = \mathbf{E}[\tau_x^+]^{-1}$ . Since  $\pi$  is unique, we may repeat this proof for all states to conclude that the equation  $\pi(y) = \mathbf{E}[\tau_y^+]^{-1}$  holds for all states  $y$ .  $\square$

A **stopping time** is a  $\mathbf{N} \cup \{\infty\}$  valued random variable  $\tau$  such that the event  $\{\tau = k\}$  is determined by  $X_0, \dots, X_k$ . In the proof above, we can substitute an arbitrary stopping time provided  $\mathbf{P}_x(\tau < \infty) = \mathbf{P}_x(X_\tau = x) = 1$ ,

and we still obtain that  $\tilde{\pi}$  is stationary. If  $\tau$  is any stopping time and  $m$  is an integer, then

$$\mathbf{P}_{x_0}(X_{m+1} = x_1, \dots, X_{m+n} = x_n | \tau = m, X_1, \dots, X_m) = \mathbf{P}_{X_m}(X_1 = x_1, \dots, X_n = x_n)$$

which is an immediate consequence of the Markov property. This is known as the **strong Markov property**, which is less obvious in the continuous setting.

## 1.5 Perron-Frobenius

There is an incredibly useful theorem of analytical linear algebra to help prove the existence of invariant distributions on finite markov chains.

**Theorem 1.5** (The Perron-Frobenius Theorem). *Let  $M$  be a positive square matrix. Then there is a positive eigenvalue  $\lambda$  of maximal modulus, called the **Perron root** of  $M$ , with one dimensional eigenspace which contains a positive vector.*

*Proof.* Let  $v \leq w$  represent that  $v_i \leq w_i$  for all  $i$ . For the purposes of this proof, we let  $|v|$  denote the vector  $v$  with  $|v|_i = |v_i|$ . We proceed in a series of steps:

(Claim 1) If  $v \geq 0$ , but  $v \neq 0$ , then  $Mv > 0$ : This follows because if  $v_i > 0$ , then for any  $j$ ,

$$(Mv)_j = \sum M_{jk}v_k \geq M_{ji}v_i > 0$$

Because of this, if  $v \geq 0$ , we may define  $g(v) = \sup\{\lambda : Mv \geq \lambda v\}$ .

(Claim 2) The function  $g(v)$  is continuous for  $v \neq 0$ : We can write  $g = \min(g_1, \dots, g_d)$ , where  $g_i(v) = \sup\{\lambda : (Mv)_i \geq \lambda v_i\}$ , and it suffices to prove the functions  $g_i$  are continuous as maps into  $(0, \infty]$ . If  $v_i \neq 0$ , then  $g_i(v) < \infty$ , because

$$(Mv)_i = \sum M_{ik}v_k \leq v_i \left( \frac{(Mv)_i}{v_i} \right)$$

so  $g_i(v) \leq (Mv)_i v_i^{-1}$ . If  $v_i, w_i \neq 0$ , and  $(Mv)_i \geq \lambda v_i$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (Mw)_i &= (Mv)_i - (M(v-w))_i \\ &\geq \lambda v_i - \sum M_{ij}(v_j - w_j) \geq \lambda v_i - \|M\|_\infty \|v - w\|_\infty \\ &= v_i \left( \lambda - \frac{\|M\|_\infty \|v - w\|_\infty}{v_i} \right) \geq v_i \left( \lambda - \frac{\|M\|_\infty \|v - w\|_\infty}{\min(v_i, w_i)} \right) \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $|g_i(v) - g_i(w)| \leq \|M\|_\infty \|v - w\|_\infty \min(v_i, w_i)^{-1}$ , which gives continuity at  $v_i$  if  $v_i \neq 0$ . On the other hand, for any  $w$  with  $w_i \neq 0$ , we conclude

$$(Mw)_i = \sum M_{ik} w_k \geq w_i \left( M_{ik} \frac{w_j}{w_i} \right)$$

so  $g_i(w) \geq M_{ik} w_j w_i^{-1}$ , so if  $w \rightarrow v$ , where  $v_i = 0$  and  $v_j \neq 0$ , then  $w_j$  remains bounded while  $w_i \rightarrow 0$ , so  $g_i(w) \rightarrow \infty$ . This concludes the proof of continuity.

Since  $g$  is continuous, and  $g(\alpha v) = g(v)$  for all  $\alpha, v \neq 0$ , we conclude that  $g$  attains its maximum  $\alpha$ , because the problem reduces to finding the maximum over the non-negative elements of the unit sphere, which forms a compact set.

1. (Claim 3) If  $g(v) = \alpha$ , then  $Mv = \alpha v$ , and all its components are strictly positive: We know that  $Mv \geq \alpha v$ . We know  $Mv \geq \alpha v$ , so if  $v \neq \alpha v$ , we conclude  $Mv > \alpha Mv$ , so  $g(Mv) > \alpha$ , contradicting the maximality of  $\alpha$  at  $v$ . But since  $v \geq 0$ ,  $Mv = \alpha v > 0$ , so we conclude all elements of  $v$  are positive.
2. (Claim 4) If  $\lambda$  is any other eigenvalue of  $M$ , then  $|\lambda| < \alpha$ : If  $v$  is an eigenvector for  $\lambda$ , and we define  $w = (|v_1|, \dots, |v_n|)$ , then

$$|\lambda v_i| = \left| \sum M_{ik} v_k \right| \leq \sum M_{ik} |v_k|$$

hence  $\alpha \geq g(|v|) \geq |\lambda|$ . If  $|\lambda| = \alpha$ , then we conclude that  $g(|v|) = \alpha$  and thus  $|v|$  is an eigenvector with eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , so

$$\left| \sum M_{ik} v_k \right| = \sum M_{ik} |v_k|$$

This equation holds only when there is a complex number  $z$  of norm one such that  $v = z|v|$  for some  $t \geq 0$ . But then

$$\lambda v = Mv = zM|v| = z|\lambda||v| = |\lambda|v$$

so  $\lambda = |\lambda|$ .

3. (Claim 4) Any two positive eigenvectors of eigenvalue  $\alpha$  are linearly independent: Let  $v$  and  $w$  be non-negative eigenvectors of eigenvalue  $\alpha$ . Choose  $\varepsilon$  small enough that  $v - \varepsilon w \geq 0$ , and  $v_i - \varepsilon w_i = 0$ . If  $v \neq \varepsilon w$ , then  $v - \varepsilon w \neq 0$ , and so  $M(\alpha^{-1}(v - \varepsilon w)) = v - \varepsilon w > 0$ , a contradiction proving  $v = \varepsilon w$ .
4. (Claim 5) The eigenvalues of any  $n - 1 \times n - 1$  submatrix of  $M$  are strictly less than  $\alpha$ : Let  $B$  be any such submatrix obtained from deleting the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column. Then  $B_{kl} = A_{f(k)g(l)}$ , where

$$f(k) = \begin{cases} k & : k < i \\ k + 1 & : k \geq i \end{cases} \quad g(l) = \begin{cases} l & : l < j \\ l + 1 & : l \geq j \end{cases}$$

$B$  satisfies the hypothesis of the Frobenius theorem, so if  $\beta$  maximizes the  $g$  function on  $B$ , there is a non-negative vector  $w$  with  $Bw = \beta w$ , and if we consider the vector  $v$  with

$$v_k = \begin{cases} w_k & : k < j \\ \varepsilon & : k = j \\ w_{k-1} & : k > j \end{cases}$$

Then  $(Mv)_k = \lambda v_k + \varepsilon M_{kj} > \lambda v_k$  for  $k \neq j$ , and we can choose  $\varepsilon$  small enough that  $(Mv)_j > \lambda \varepsilon = \lambda v_j$ , because  $w$  is a positive vector and so  $(Mv)_j = \sum M_{jk} v_k \geq \sum_{k \neq j} M_{jk} v_k$ , which does not depend on  $\varepsilon$ . We conclude that  $\beta < \alpha$ .

5. (Claim 6) Consider the characteristic polynomial  $f(\lambda) = \det(M - \lambda)$ . Then  $f'(\lambda) = -\sum_{i=1}^n \det(M_i - \lambda)$ , where  $M_i$  is obtained from  $M$  by deleting the  $i$ th row and  $i$ th column: We consider the expansion

$$f(\lambda) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \prod_{i=1}^n (M - \lambda)_{i\sigma(i)}$$

Then, by the product rule,

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(\lambda) &= - \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \sum_{i=\sigma(i)} \prod_{j \neq i} (M - \lambda)_{j\sigma(j)} \\
&= - \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{\sigma \in S_{n-1}} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \prod_{j=1}^n (M_i - \lambda)_{j\sigma(j)} \\
&= - \sum_{i=1}^n \det(M_i - \lambda)
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $\alpha$  exceeds the modulus of any eigenvalue of  $M_i$ , and  $\det(M_i - \lambda) \rightarrow \pm\infty$  as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$  (with the sign determined by the dimension of  $M_i$ , and thus constant over all  $M_i$ , we conclude that  $f'(\lambda) \neq 0$ , so  $\alpha$  has a one dimensional eigenspace, since it is a simple root of the characteristic polynomial.

Looking back over the claims, we have proven all we set out to do.  $\square$

Now suppose  $P$  is a stochastic, positive matrix. Then we may apply Perron-Frobenius to  $P$ , obtaining a Perron root  $\lambda$ . We must have  $|\lambda| \leq 1$ , since all entries of the matrix are less than one, and so for any vector  $v$ ,  $|(Av)_i| \leq |v_i|$ . Because  $(1, \dots, 1)^t$  is a right eigenvector for  $P$  of eigenvalue 1,  $\lambda = 1$ . Thus  $P$  can be modified, under some change of basis matrix  $Q$ , such that

$$D = QPQ^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & M \end{pmatrix}$$

Where  $M$  is a square matrix such that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} M^n = 0$  (Use the Jordan Canonical Form, and the fact that all eigenvalues of  $M$  are less than one). But then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P^n = Q^{-1} \left( \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} D^n \right) Q = Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q = \begin{pmatrix} \mu \\ \vdots \\ \mu \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $\mu$  is a row vector which sums to one.  $\mu$  is the unique invariant distribution to the process, because  $\mu P = (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu P^n) P = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu P^{n+1} = \mu$ .

This argument can be considerably strengthened. Let  $P$  be a stochastic matrix such that  $P^n$  is positive, for some  $n$ . The eigenvalues of  $P^n$  are

simply the eigenvalues of  $P$  taken to the power of  $n$ . Perron and Frobenius tell us that 1 is the Perron root of  $P^n$  (since  $P^n$  is stochastic), so that  $P$  has a maximal eigenvalue which is an  $n$ 'th root of unity. Since  $P^{n+1}$  also has all positive entries, the maximal eigenvalue of  $P$  must also be an  $n+1$ 'th root of unity, and this is only true if the eigenvalue is 1. If  $v$  is an eigenvector of eigenvalue 1, it must also be an eigenvector of  $P^n$ , so the eigenvectors of  $P$  are the same as the eigenvectors of  $P^n$ , and we may choose an eigenvector which is also a distribution - an invariant distribution to which the matrix converges. Note, however, that we cannot expect all homogenous matrices to satisfy this theorem.

**Example.** Consider a process with transition matrix

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then  $P^n = I$  for even  $n$ , and  $P^n = P$  for odd  $n$ . Thus  $P^n$  cannot converge. This is because the matrix is periodic – it oscillates between values. Note that  $P^n$  never has all positive entries. The only time  $\mu P^n$  converges is when  $\mu = (1/2, 1/2)$ .

**Example.** Consider a process whose transition matrix is the identity matrix  $I$ . Then  $P^n \rightarrow I$ , so  $\mu P^n \rightarrow \mu$  for all distributions  $\mu$ . Thus we can always take limits of probability distributions, but different initial distributions give rise to different asymptotics. This is because the process is reducible – there is not enough ‘mixing’ among all possible states to generate a homogenous distribution.

## 1.6 Aperiodicity and Irreducibility

Our problem thus reduces to classifying those stochastic matrices  $P$  for which  $P^n$  is positive, for some  $n$ . This property will reduce to identifying two concepts on which the positivity fails: periodicity and irreducibility.

There is one other way an irreducible Markov chain can fail to converge like we would like. For any state  $x$ , let  $J(x) = \{n \in \mathbf{N} : P_{xx}^n > 0\}$ . Then  $J(x)$  is closed under addition. The greatest common divisor of  $J(x)$  is known as the **period** of  $s$ . A Markov chain for which every state has period one is known as **aperiodic**. Note that two states in the same communication class share a common period. Thus we may talk about the periodicity of a irreducible markov chain.

**Theorem 1.6.** *Let  $P$  be a stochastic matrix, which determines an aperiodic, irreducible Markov chain. Then there is a unique vector  $\mu$  for which  $\mu P = \mu$ , and for any other probability distribution  $\pi$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \pi P^n = \mu$ .*

*Proof.* We just need to verify that  $P^n$  is a positive matrix for a large enough  $n$ . Since  $P$  is aperiodic, for large enough  $m$ ,  $P_{ii}^m > 0$  for all  $i$ . If  $j \neq i$ , there is some  $k$  for which  $P_{ij}^k > 0$ . Then, for large enough  $m$ ,  $P_{ij}^m > 0$ , since

$$P_{ij}^m \geq P_{ij}^k P_{ii}^{m-k} > 0$$

Taking  $m$  large enough so that the argument above works for all  $i$  and  $j$ , we find  $P_{ij}^m > 0$  for all  $i, j$ . It follows that we may apply Perron-Frobenius to  $P^m$ , and we find our invariant distribution.  $\square$

**Corollary 1.7.** *On every aperiodic, irreducible Markov chain on a finite state space there exists a unique stationary distribution.*

We call an irreducible, aperiodic Markov chain **ergodic**, which is why the theorem is known as the ergodic theorem for Markov chains. An ergodic chain is a chain with enough ‘mixing’ to generate an invariant distribution for the process. In terms of Ergodic theory, the pushforward map  $T$  on  $S^{\mathbb{N}}$  given by mapping  $x_0, x_1, \dots$  to  $x_1, \dots$  is measure preserving under measure induced by the random variables  $X_0, X_1, \dots$ . In terms of general ergodic theory, this map is ergodic if and only if the chain is irreducible, and mixing if and only if the chain is aperiodic.

**Example.** *Let us consider the asymptotics of a two state time homogenous markov chain on two states  $x$  and  $y$ . There are parameters  $0 \leq p, q \leq 1$  such that the transition matrix has the form*

$$P = \begin{matrix} & \begin{matrix} x & y \end{matrix} \\ \begin{matrix} x \\ y \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 1-p & p \\ q & 1-q \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

*If  $p = 0$  or  $q = 0$ , the chain is reducible. If  $p = 1$  and  $q = 1$ , then the chain is periodic, swinging back and forth deterministically between the two states. In any other case, the Markov chain is ergodic, and since*

$$\left( \frac{q}{p+q}, \frac{p}{p+q} \right) \begin{pmatrix} 1-p & p \\ q & 1-q \end{pmatrix} = \left( \frac{q}{p+q}, \frac{p}{p+q} \right)$$

the unique invariant probability distribution is  $\mu^* = (p + q)^{-1}(q, p)$ , and this is the limiting distribution. Given an arbitrary initial distribution  $\mu_0$ , if we define  $\Delta_n = \mu_n - \mu^*$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta_{n+1}(x) &= (1 - p)\mu_n(x) + q\mu_n(y) - \frac{q}{p + q} \\ &= (1 - p - q)\mu_n(x) + q - \frac{q}{p + q} \\ &= (1 - p - q) \left( \mu_n(x) - \frac{q}{p + q} \right) = (1 - p - q)\Delta_n(x)\end{aligned}$$

And since  $\Delta_n(y) = -\Delta_n(x)$ , we conclude  $\Delta_n = (1 - p - q)^n \Delta_0$ , so the distribution converges linearly at a rate  $1 - p - q$ .

**Example.** Consider a random walk on a connected graph with  $n$  vertices and  $m$  edges. Then the process is irreducible, and since

$$\sum_{vw \in E} \deg(v)P(v, w) = \sum_{vw \in E} \frac{\deg(v)}{\deg(v)} = \deg(w)$$

so the distribution  $\mu(v) = \deg(v)/2m$  is invariant. We say a graph is regular if every vertex has the same degree, in which case  $\mu$  is the uniform distribution.

## 1.7 Periodicity and Average State Distributions

If a chain has period greater than one, say of period  $n$ , then the limiting properties of the process are not so simple. We may divide the states into a partition  $K_1, K_2, \dots, K_n$ , for which states in  $K_i$  can only transition to states in  $K_{i+1}$ , or from  $K_n$  to  $K_1$ . If we only look at the time epochs  $t_1, t_2, \dots$  where the chain is guaranteed to be in a certain partition, then we obtain an aperiodic markov chain, which in the irreducible case reduces to invariant distributions on the states. If our chain has period  $m$ , our chain converges to  $m$  distributions  $\mu_{t_1}, \dots, \mu_{t_m}$ . The limit  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu P^n$  may not exist, but the chebyshev limit

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sum_{k=0}^n \mu P^k}{n} = \mu \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sum_{k=0}^n P^k}{n} = \frac{\mu_{t_1} + \dots + \mu_{t_m}}{m}$$

will always exist. It represents the overall, accumulated average of which states we visit over the whole time period the chain is ran for.



**Example.** Take a markov chain of period 2, with transition matrix

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/2 & 0 & 1/2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 & 0 & 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/2 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

We may diagonalize this matrix, letting  $P = QDQ^{-1}$ , where

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & -1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Taking matrix limits, we see that only the first two rows of  $D$  become relevant far into the future, so that for large  $n$ , for any  $\mu$ ,

$$P^n \approx \begin{pmatrix} 1/8 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/8 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/8 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/8 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/8 \\ 1/8 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/4 & 1/8 \end{pmatrix} + (-1)^n \begin{pmatrix} 1/8 & -1/4 & 1/4 & -1/4 & 1/8 \\ -1/8 & 1/4 & -1/4 & 1/4 & -1/8 \\ 1/8 & -1/4 & 1/4 & -1/4 & 1/8 \\ -1/8 & 1/4 & -1/4 & 1/4 & -1/8 \\ 1/8 & -1/4 & 1/4 & -1/4 & 1/8 \end{pmatrix}$$

On even states,  $P^n$  converges to a different matrix than on odd states. Nonetheless, the Chebyshev limit exists for any distribution  $\mu$ , and is given by

$$\frac{1}{2}[(1/4, 0, 1/2, 0, 1/4) + (0, 1/2, 0, 1/2, 0)] = (1/8, 1/4, 1/4, 1/4, 1/8)$$

This is not the distribution at a certain time point, but the distribution of averages over a long time period.

For instance, if  $\{X_i\}$  is a irreducible markov chain, we would like to know the proportional number of times a certain state  $x$  is visited. We would like to determine the expected value of

$$S_x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\mathbf{I}(X_k = x)}{n}$$

$$\mathbf{E}(S_x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{n} \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{I}(X_k = x)) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\mathbf{P}(X_k = x)}{n}$$

And this is just the invariant probability of the process – the Chebyshev limit.

## 1.8 Stopping Times

We would like to finish our discussion of finite state space Markov chains by analyzing a certain class of random variables – representing the time at which a certain event happens.

**Definition.** A **Stopping Time** for a process  $\{X_0, X_1, \dots\}$  is a  $\mathbf{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$  valued random variable  $\tau$ , such that, if we know the values of  $X_0, \dots, X_n$ , we can tell if  $\tau = n$ . Rigorously,  $\mathbf{I}(\tau = n)$  is a function of the  $X_0, \dots, X_n$ .

A stopping time basically encapsulates a decision process. After observing the  $X_0, \dots, X_n$ , we decide whether we want to finish observing the Markov process. We can't look into our future, and must decide at that time point to leave.

**Example.** Let  $\{X_0, X_1, \dots\}$  be a stochastic process on a state space  $\mathcal{S}$ . Fix a state  $s$ , and define the **hitting time**  $\tau_s$  to be

$$\tau_s = \min\{n : X_n = s\}$$

Since  $\mathbf{I}(\tau_s = n) = \mathbf{I}(X_0 \neq s, \dots, X_{n-1} \neq s, X_n = s)$ , this is a stopping time.

**Example.** Let  $\{X_0, X_1, \dots\}$  be a stochastic process on a state space  $\mathcal{S}$ . Fix a state  $s$ , and suppose that  $\mathbf{P}(X_0 = s) = 1$ . The **return time**  $\rho_s$  of the process is defined

$$\rho_s = \min\{n \geq 1 : X_n = s\}$$

And is a stopping time.

Since stopping times are valued on the time epochs upon which a process is defined, we can do interesting things to combine the time with the

process. For instance, we may consider a random variable  $X_\tau$ . In the case that  $\tau$  is the hitting or return time for a state  $s$ , then  $X_\tau = s$ . One wonders whether the Markov property behaves nicely with respect to a stopping time. This is the strong Markov property.

**Definition.** let  $\{X_t\}$  be a markov process, and  $\tau$  a stopping time.  $X_t$  satisfies the **strong Markov property** with respect to  $\tau$ , if, for  $t_1 < \dots < t_n < \tau$ ,

$$\mathbf{P}(X_\tau = y | X_{t_n} = x_n, \dots, X_{t_1} = t_1) = \mathbf{P}(X_\tau = y | X_{t_n} = x_n)$$

In other words,  $X_t$  forgets history with respect to the stopping time. By letting  $\tau = n$  be a fixed integer, we obtain the normal markov property.

**Theorem 1.8.** *All discrete markov processes satisfies the strong markov property with respect to any stopping time.*

*Proof.* Let  $\{X_0, X_1, \dots\}$  be a markov process, and  $\tau$  a stopping time. Then, assuming  $t_1 < \dots < t_n < \tau$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(X_\tau = y | X_{t_n} = x_n, \dots, X_{t_1} = x_1) &= \sum_{k=t_n+1}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(\tau = k) \mathbf{P}(X_k = y | X_{t_n} = x_n) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(X_\tau = y | X_{t_n} = x_n) \end{aligned}$$

So the process is strongly Markov. □

Let us use our tools to derive the expected return time  $\mathbf{E}(\rho_s)$ . First, let  $\mathcal{J}_0 = 0$ ,  $\mathcal{J}_1 = \rho_s$  and, more generally, define  $\mathcal{J}_k$  to be the  $k$ 'th time we return to  $s$ ,  $\mathcal{J}_k = \min\{n > \mathcal{J}_{k-1} : X_n = s\}$ . Then the strong markov property shows  $\mathcal{J}_{k+1} - \mathcal{J}_k$  are independant and identically distributed, by the law of large numbers, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\mathcal{J}_k - \mathcal{J}_{k-1}}{n} = \frac{\mathcal{J}_n}{n} \rightarrow \mathbf{E}(\rho_s)$$

After a large enough  $n$ , each state will be approximately visited  $n\mu_s$  times. Thus  $\mathcal{J}_n \approx n/\mu_s$ , and  $\mathbf{E}(\rho_s) = 1/\mu_s$ .

Now we can analyze Markov chains with transient states. Recall that we can write the transition matrix of such a process as

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} P_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & P_2 & \ddots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \dots & P_n & 0 \\ \dots & S_1 & \dots & Q \end{pmatrix}$$

We have  $Q^n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , since we are guaranteed to leave a transient state and never return.

All eigenvalues of  $Q$  are less than one in absolute value, so  $I - Q$  is invertible. A small computation shows that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} Q^k = (I - Q)^{-1}$$

provided the sum on the right converges, which it must, since the series converges absolutely (and the space is Banach).  $Q_{ij}^k$  is the probability that  $X_k = x_j$  given  $X_0 = x_i$ , so  $(\sum_{k=0}^n Q^k)_{ij}$  is the expected number of visits to  $x_j$  from time epoch  $n$  starting from  $x_i$ . Taking  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we find the expected number of visits to the state before hitting a recurrent state is  $(I - Q)_{ij}^{-1}$ . If we sum up row  $i$ , we get the expected number of states before hitting a recurrent state starting from  $i$ .

We can also use this method in an irreducible chain to find the expected time to reach a state  $x_j$  starting at  $x_i$ , for  $i \neq j$ . We modify the Markov process by making it impossible to leave  $x_j$  once it has been entered. This makes all other states transient. Then the expected number of visits before entering a recurrent state is the expected number of states until we hit  $x_j$ .

How about determining the probability of entering a specific recurrent class starting from a transient state. To simplify our discussion, let each recurrent class consist of a single vertex, whose probability of return to itself equals 1. First, to simplify the situation, assume each recurrent class consists of a single vertex (we may ‘shrink’ any Markov process so that each class consists of a single vertex for our situation). For each transient  $x$  and recurrent  $y$ , let  $\alpha(x, y)$  be the probability of ending up at  $y$  starting

at  $x$ . We have

$$\alpha(x, y) = \sum_{z \text{ transient}} P(x, z) \alpha(z, y) + P(x, y)$$

Let  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  be the recurrent states of the process, and  $\{y_1, \dots, y_m\}$  the transient states. If we define a matrix  $A_{ij} = \alpha(x_i, y_j)$ , then the equation above tells us that  $A = S + QA$ , where we write

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \ddots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \dots & S & \dots & Q \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence  $(I - Q)A = S$ , and so  $A = (I - Q)^{-1}S$ . This is the limiting values of  $P^n$  on  $S$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Example.** Consider a gambler who's going 'all in'. He won't leave without obtaining a certain amount of money  $N$ , unless he runs out of money and goes bust. We want to find out the probability that he will go home happy rather than broke. The situation of the gambler can be modelled by a random walk on  $\{0, 1, \dots, N\}$ . We assume each integer represents how much money the gambler has at a certain time, and that each bet either costs or wins the gambler a single unit of money. If  $p > 0$  is the probability of winning the bet, then the transition probabilities of the random walk are

$$P(i, i+1) = p \quad P(i, i-1) = (1-p) \quad P(0, 0) = P(N, N) = 1$$

This is a reducible markov chain with transient states. We are trying to determine the probability of entering the different recurrent classes, starting from a certain transient state  $M$ . Using our newly introduced technique, we write  $\alpha(x, 0)$  and  $\alpha(x, N)$  to be the probabilities of going home rich or poor. The matrix notation is ugly for our purposes, so we just use the linear equations considered,

$$\alpha(1, 1) = p\alpha(2, 0) \quad \alpha(n-1, 1) = p + (1-p)\alpha(n-1, 1)$$

$$\alpha(k, 1) = p\alpha(k+1, 1) + (1-p)\alpha(k-1, 1)$$

These are a series of linear difference equations. If we assume  $\alpha(k, 0) = \beta^k$ , then  $\beta^k = p\beta^{k+1} + (1-p)\beta^{k-1}$ . This equation has the solution  $\beta = \left\{1, \frac{1-p}{p}\right\}$ , and thus a general solution is of the form

$$\alpha(k, 1) = c_0 + c_1 \left(\frac{1-p}{p}\right)^k$$

The boundary conditions  $\alpha(0, 1) = 0$ ,  $\alpha(N, 1) = 1$  tells us that

$$c_0 + c_1 = 0 \quad c_0 + c_1 \left(\frac{1-p}{p}\right)^N = 1$$

So

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1-p}{p}\right)^N - 1} \quad c_0 = \frac{1}{\left(1 - \frac{1-p}{p}\right)^N}$$

And the general form is

$$\alpha(k, 1) = \frac{1 - \left(\frac{1-p}{p}\right)^k}{1 - \left(\frac{1-p}{p}\right)^N}$$

provided, of course, that  $p \neq 1/2$ . In this case, 1 is a double roots of the characteristic equation, so

$$\alpha(k, 1) = c_0 + c_1 k$$

and  $c_0 + c_1 = 0$ ,  $c_0 + c_1 N = 1$ , so  $c_1 = \frac{1}{N-1}$ ,

$$\alpha(k, 1) = \frac{k-1}{N-1}$$

Our discussion of the classical theory of ergodic finite state space markov chain has been effectively completed.

## Chapter 2

# Countable-State Markov Chains

### 2.1 General Properties

Let us now consider time homogenous Markov chains on a countable state space. For instance, we may consider random walks on  $\mathbf{N}$ ,  $\mathbf{Z}$ , and  $\mathbf{Z}^2$ . Most finite space techniques extend to the countable situation, but not all. We may continue to talk of irreducibility, periodicity, the Chapman Kolmogorov equation, communication, and the like. Recurrence and transience is a little more complicated, since in a single ‘recurrence class’ of infinite size, it may still be very rare for a state to return to itself.

### 2.2 Recurrence and Transience

We call a state **recurrent** if the markov chain is almost certain to return to itself infinitely many times. If a state in a class is recurrent, all states in a class is recurrent, then all states in the same class are recurrent. A state is **transient** if it is not recurrent. In the finite case, these new definitions agree with previous terminology.

How do we reliably determine if a process is transient? Let  $S_x$  be the total number of visits to  $x$ , assuming we start at  $x$

$$S_x = \sum \mathbf{I}(X_n = x)$$

Calculating recurrence reduces to calculating  $\mathbf{P}(S_x = \infty)$ . Since  $S_x$  is a

random variable, we can take expectations

$$\mathbf{E}(S_x) = \sum_n \mathbf{P}(X_n = x | X_0 = x) = \sum_n P^n(x, x)$$

If  $\mathbf{E}(S_x) < \infty$ , then  $\mathbf{P}(S_x < \infty) = 0$ , so  $x$  is transient. Consider the hitting time  $\tau_x$ . If  $\mathbf{P}(\tau_x < \infty) = 1$ , then by time homogeneity we conclude that  $x$  is hit infinitely many times. Suppose instead that  $\mathbf{P}(\tau_x < \infty) = q < 1$ . We have  $\mathbf{P}(S_x = m) = q^{m-1}(1 - q)$ . Thus

$$\mathbf{E}(S_x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} m \mathbf{P}(S_x = m) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} m q^{m-1} (1 - q) = \frac{1}{1 - q} < \infty$$

Hence a state is transient if and only if the expected number of returns is finite, that is,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n(x, x) < \infty$$

**Example.** Let us find whether symmetric random walk on  $\mathbf{Z}$  is recurrent or symmetric. The chain is irreducible, so we only need determine the transience of a single point, say, 0. The number of paths from 0 to itself of length  $2n$  is the number of choices of  $n$  down movements given  $2n$  ups and downs, so

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{2n} = 0 | X_0 = 0) = \frac{\binom{2n}{n}}{2^{2n}} = \frac{(2n)!}{(n!)^2 4^n}$$

For large  $n$ , Stirling's formula tells us that  $n! \approx \sqrt{2\pi n} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n$ , so

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{2n} = 0 | X_0 = 0) \approx \sqrt{\frac{1}{\pi n}} \left(\frac{2n}{e}\right)^{2n} \left(\frac{e}{n}\right)^{2n} 4^{-n} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\pi n}}$$

Since  $\sum (\pi n)^{-1/2} \rightarrow \infty$ , so must our sum, so the process is recurrent.

Now take a random walk on  $\mathbf{Z}^d$ . The number of paths from 0 to itself of length  $2n$  is

$$\sum_{2k_1 + \dots + 2k_d = 2n} \binom{2n}{2k_1, \dots, 2k_d} = \sum_{k_1 + \dots + k_d = n} \frac{(2n)!}{(2k_1)! \dots (2k_d)!}$$

FINISH HERE and the walk is recurrent for  $d \leq 2$ , and transient for  $d > 2$ .



Here's yet another method for determining recurrence. Fix a state  $y$  on an irreducible markov chain, and define  $\alpha(x) = \mathbf{P}(X_n = y \text{ for some } n \geq 0 | X_0 = x)$ . Then  $\alpha(y) = 1$ , and  $\alpha(x) = \sum P(x, z)\alpha(z)$  for  $z \neq y$ . If the chain is recurrent, then  $\alpha(z) = 1$  for all  $z$ . Less obviously, if  $y$  is a transient state,  $\inf\{\alpha(z)\} = 0$ . We shall prove later that if  $y$  is recurrent, there is no solution  $\alpha$  with these properties, and if  $y$  is transient,  $\alpha$  exists, and is unique.

Even if a chain is recurrent, an invariant distribution may not exist, due to the fact that we have an infinite number of states to work around. Let's specialize again. A chain is **null recurrent** if it is recurrent, but  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P^n(x, y) = 0$ , and is **positive recurrent** otherwise. An invariant probability is a function  $\mu$  for which  $\mu P = \mu$ . We won't show it, but every irreducible, aperiodic, positive recurrent Markov chain has a distribution  $\mu$ . Moreover, such a chain is positive recurrent if and only if it has an invariant distribution  $\mu$ . The return time  $\tau_x$  has  $\mathbf{E}(\tau_x | X_0 = x) = 1/\mu(x)$ . For null recurrent chains,  $\mathbf{E}(\tau_x | X_0 = x) = \infty$ .

**Example.** Let us derive the equations for a random walk on  $\mathbf{Z}$ . We have  $P(x, x-1) = q$ , and  $P(x, x+1) = 1-q$ , for some fixed  $0 \leq q \leq 1$ . We attempt to solve the equations to determine that the chain is recurrent.

$$\alpha(x) = q\alpha(x+1) + (1-q)\alpha(x-1)$$

Using the rules of linear difference equations, if  $\alpha$  exists, it satisfies  $\alpha(x) = \beta^x$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned}\beta^x &= q\beta^{x+1} + (1-q)\beta^{x-1} \\ q\beta^2 - \beta + (1-q) &= 0 \\ \beta &= \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1-4q(1-q)}}{2q} = \frac{1 \pm (2q-1)}{2q} = \left\{1, \frac{1-q}{q}\right\}\end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\alpha(x) = c_0 + c_1 \left(\frac{1-q}{q}\right)^x$ . If  $q < 1/2$ ,  $c_1 = 0$  because  $\alpha$  must be bounded. But then  $\alpha(0) = 1$ , so  $c_0 = 1$ , and this contradicts that  $\inf \alpha(x) = 0$ . Hence the process is recurrent. For  $q > 1/2$ , we may pick  $c_1 = 1$ , so the process is recurrent. For  $q = 1/2$ , we have  $\alpha = c_0 + c_1 t$ , which cannot be bounded, so the process is recurrent.

Let us try and determine if the random walk is positive or null recurrent for  $q \leq 1/2$ . We need  $\mu$  with  $\sum \mu(x) = 1$ , and  $\sum \mu(x)P(x, y) = \mu(y)$ . In this

example we therefore need

$$\mu(x-1)q + \mu(x+1)(1-q) = \mu(x)$$

$$q\lambda^{x-1} + (1-q)\lambda^{x+1} = \lambda^x$$

$$\mu(x) = c_0 + c_1 \left( \frac{q}{1-q} \right)^x$$

We must have  $c_0 = 0$ , and  $c_1 > 0$ . If  $q = 1/2$ , we cannot solve for  $\mu$ , so the chain must be null recurrent. For  $q < 1/2$  we find that

$$\sum_{x=-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \frac{q}{1-q} \right)^x = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{q}{1-q} \right)^x + \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1-q}{q} \right)^x - 1$$

This is infinite, so the process is null recurrent.

## Chapter 3

### Harmonic Functions

We've already seen some work on harmonic functions on a finite state space. Here we address some of the theory when the state space is countable. Suppose that we are given a time homogenous Markov transition operator  $P : E \times E \rightarrow [0, 1]$ . We have seen that  $P$  operates on probability measures  $\mu$  on  $E$  on the right to give the probability measure  $\mu P$  one step into the future in the Markov process starting with distribution  $\mu$ , and that if  $f : E \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ , then

$$(Pf)(x) = \sum P(x, y)f(y)$$

Gives the expected value of  $f$  one step into the future starting at  $x$ . We call a function **harmonic** when  $Pf = f$ , **subharmonic** if  $Pf \geq f$ , and **superharmonic** if  $Pf \leq f$ .

If  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is a Markov chain induced from  $P$  by any initial measure  $\mu$ , and  $f$  is a superharmonic function, then  $f(X_n)$  is a supermartingale, because

$$\mathbf{E}[f(X_n)|X_1, \dots, X_{n-1}] = \sum f(X_{n-1}, y)f(y) = (Pf)(X_{n-1}) \leq f(X_{n-1})$$

In particular, if  $f$  is non-negative, and if the markov chain is irreducible recurrent, in the sense that the stopping times  $T^x = \min\{n > 0 : X_n = x\}$  of visiting each state in the markov chain are finite almost surely regardless of the initial distribution, then we can apply the optional stopping theorem for non-negative supermartingales to conclude that if  $X_0 = x$ , then

$$f(y) = \mathbf{E}[f(X_{T^y})] \leq \mathbf{E}[f(X_0)] = f(x)$$

Since  $x$  and  $y$  were arbitrary, we conclude that  $f$  must be a constant function. Conversely, suppose every non-negative harmonic function on a Markov chain is constant. If we let  $A(x, y) = \mathbf{P}_x(T^y < \infty)$  denote the probability that we will eventually reach  $y$  starting at  $x$ , then we find

$$A(x, y) = P(x, y) + \sum_{z \neq y} P(x, z)A(z, y) \geq \sum_{z \neq y} P(x, z)A(z, y)$$

It follows from this that the function  $A$  is a non-negative superharmonic function, hence  $A$  is constant,  $A(x, y) = C \in [0, 1]$ . But now we find

$$C = A(x, y) = P(x, y) + C \sum_{z \neq y} P(x, z) = P(x, y) + C[1 - P(x, y)]$$

so  $CP(x, y) = P(x, y)$ , and since we cannot have  $P(x, y) = 0$  for all  $x, y$ , we conclude  $C = 1$ , which means exactly that the Markov chain is irreducible recurrent. Thus the class of superharmonic functions on the process has sufficient information to tell us whether a process is irreducible recurrent. The theory of harmonic functions in stochastic processes explores how strong the correspondence is between a given process and the harmonic functions on that process.

## Chapter 4

# Branching Processes

Victorian upper-class culture strongly valued history and heritage. It soon became a concern when it was noticed that venerable surnames were dying out. If a male dies without producing a male heir, then a branch disappears from a family tree. If no males produce an heir in a generation, then the name completely dies out. Some believed the exceeding comfort of upper-class life encouraged sterility, and that this would soon cause the lower-classes to dominate England. Worried about this problem, the polymath Francis Galton put up a bulletin in “The Educational Times”, challenging mathematicians to determine the cause of the problem. The reverend Henry William Watson took him up on this offer, and together they attempted a probabilistic analysis of the problem.

Galton and Watson represented the spread of families by a succeeding discrete number of generations  $X_0, X_1, \dots$ , where the initial generation  $X_0$  produces the offspring  $X_1$ , which produces the offspring  $X_2$ , and so on, through the ages. Each time epoch represents a generation of a species, so that at each time interval, offspring are generated, and the current population dies off. Though it may seem a simplification to assume that generations do not overlap, assuming that each offspring reproduces independently, one can just consider the process as a family tree, independent of time.  $X_0$  just represents the initial roots of the tree,  $X_1$  represents the offspring on the first layer of the tree, and so on and so forth, regardless of which order they came into being.

We now make the assumption that each member of the species, regardless of which generation the species is in, has an equal chance of producing offspring, and that the population produces asexually and independently;

considering only men as heirs to a family tree results in such an asexual process. These assumptions are equivalent to saying that  $X_t$  is a Markov chain with a certain probability transition function, which we now define. Fix some distribution  $\rho$  over  $\mathbf{N}$ , which represents the distribution of a particular person's children, and an initial probability distribution  $X_0$ , also over  $\mathbf{N}$ . We define a stochastic process  $\{X_i\}$  by considering the transition probabilities

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{t+1} = m | X_t = n) = (\rho * \rho * \cdots * \rho)(m)$$

Where  $(\rho * \rho * \cdots * \rho)$  is the  $n$ -fold convolution of  $\rho$ . More vicerally, we can construct  $X$  by considering an infinite grid of independent and identically distributed random variables  $Y_{ij} \sim \rho$ , and defining

$$X_{n+1} = \sum_{i=1}^{X_n} Y_{in}$$

The resulting Markov chain is known as a **Branching Process**.

## 4.1 The Distribution of the $n$ 'th Generation

One defining property of the random variables  $X_n$  is that they are defined in terms of sums of *independent* random variables. This means that the random variable will probably behave well under certain Fourier transform methods, which utilize the exponential function to transform sums in an easy to control way. One probabilistic Fourier transform method is to calculate probability generating functions. Given  $X_n$ , we consider the analytic function

$$G_n(t) = \mathbf{E} \left[ t^{X_n} \right] = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(X_n = k) t^k$$

which is well defined and analytic for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . We can calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E} \left[ t^{X_n} \middle| X_{n-1} = i \right] &= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} t^j \mathbf{P}(X_n = j | X_{n-1} = i) \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} t^j (\rho * \cdots * \rho)(j) \end{aligned}$$

We note that the  $k$  fold convolution  $\rho * \dots * \rho$  is the distribution of a sum of  $k$  independent random variables  $Y_1, \dots, Y_k$  distributed according to  $\rho$ , and so by independence

$$\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} t^j (\rho * \dots * \rho)(j) = \mathbf{E} \left[ t^{\sum Y_i} \right] = \prod \mathbf{E} \left[ t^{Y_i} \right] = \mathbf{E} \left[ t^Y \right]^k = G(t)^k$$

where  $G(t)$  is the probability generating function corresponding to  $Y$  (this is a general consequence of the fact that Fourier methods turn convolution into multiplication). This implies that  $\mathbf{E}[t^{X_n} | X_{n-1}] = G(t)^{X_{n-1}}$ , and so if  $G$  is the probability generating function corresponding to  $Y$ . Applying the tower formula, we conclude that

$$G_n(t) = \mathbf{E} \left[ G(t)^{X_{n-1}} \right] = G_{n-1}(G(t))$$

and so  $G_n(t) = (G_0 \circ G^n)(t)$ .

## 4.2 Mean Population Size

We shall start by understanding how the mean size of the evolution varies over time. Note that the power series representation of  $G_n$  guarantees that

$$G'_n(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k \mathbf{P}(X_n = k) t^{k-1} = \mathbf{E}[X_n e^{tX_n}]$$

which implies  $G'_n(0) = \mathbf{E}[X_n]$ , so  $G_n$  can tell us the expectations of the functions  $X_n$ . The relation  $G_{n+1}(t) = (G_n \circ G)(t)$  tells us that

$$G'_{n+1}(t) = G'(t)(G'_n \circ G)(t)$$

and in particular, this means

$$\mathbf{E}[X_{n+1}] = G'_{n+1}(0) = G'(0)G'_n(0) = \mu \mathbf{E}[X_n]$$

because  $G'(0) = \mathbf{E}[Y]$ , where  $Y \sim \rho$ . This means  $\mathbf{E}[X_n] = \mu^n \mathbf{E}[X_0]$ . We can already conclude from these calculations the intuitive fact that

1. If  $\mu < 1$ , then the average population tends to extinction.

2. If  $\mu = 1$ , the average population is maintained.
3. If  $\mu > 1$ , the average population becomes unbounded.

It shall turn out that extinction is guaranteed even in the case that  $\mu = 1$ . The intuitive reason why is that even if the average population is maintained, eventually you will get unlucky and end up with a generation producing no offspring, which will end your entire family line.

### 4.3 Probability of Extinction

Regardless of your average population growth, provided  $\rho(0) > 0$  there is a chance that the population will eventually become extinct. Indeed,  $\mathbf{P}(X_{n+1} = 0 | X_n = k) = \rho(0)^k > 0$ . We now discuss the probability  $\pi \in [0, 1]$  that extinction occurs. We calculate that

$$\pi = \mathbf{P}\left(\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \{X_n = 0\}\right) = \mathbf{P}\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \{X_n = 0\}\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P}(X_n = 0) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \pi_n$$

where  $\pi_n$  is the probability of extinction in  $n$  steps. If  $\mu < 1$ , we know that processes almost surely become extinct, because we can apply Markov's inequality to conclude that

$$\pi_n = \mathbf{P}(X_n = 0) = 1 - \mathbf{P}(X_n \geq 1) \geq 1 - \mathbf{E}(X_n) = 1 - \mu^n \mathbf{E}(X_0)$$

For  $\mu < 1$ , this value converges to 1 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . It is more difficult to calculate the extinction probability for  $\mu \geq 1$ , but the probability generating function provides a powerful tool to calculate this probability.

For now, we assume that  $X_0 = 1$ . It then follows that  $G_0(t) = t$ , so  $G_n(t) = G^n(t)$ . The generating function's construction implies

$$\pi_n = G_n(0) = G(G_{n-1}(t)) = G(\pi_{n-1})$$

allowing us to calculate  $\pi_n$  recursively. Letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$  on both sides of this equation, using the continuity of  $G$  on  $[0, 1]$ , gives  $\pi = G(\pi)$ . We calculate that

$$\begin{aligned} G(0) &= \rho(0) \geq 0 \\ G(1) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(Y = k) = 1 \end{aligned}$$



Since all the coefficients in the expansion of  $G$  are positive, we know that  $G'(x), G''(x) \geq 0$  for  $x > 0$ , so  $G$  is convex and increasing in  $(0, 1)$ . If  $G'(x), G''(x)$  is *strictly* greater than zero on  $(0, 1)$ , then we can conclude  $G$  is *strictly convex*. This occurs except in the special case that  $\rho(0) + \rho(1) = 1$ , and in these cases we find  $G(x) = \rho(0) + \rho(1)x$ , so either

- $\rho(1) = 1$ : population size stays constant at every generation, and so if  $X_0 = 1$ ,  $\pi = 0$ .
- $\rho(0) > 0$ : We calculate  $\pi_{n+1} = G(\pi_n) = \rho(0) + \rho(1)\pi_n$ , which gives

$$\pi_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \rho(1)^k \rho(0) = \frac{1 - \rho(1)^n}{1 - \rho(1)} \rho(0) = 1 - \rho(1)^n$$

and so we easily see that since  $\rho(1) \neq 1$ ,  $\pi_n \rightarrow 1$ .

The fact that  $G$  is increasing and strictly convex implies  $G(x) = x$  has *at most one* solution  $x_0$  in  $(0, 1)$ . If  $x_0$  exists, then it follows that if  $\pi_0 \leq x_0$ , then  $\pi_n \rightarrow x_0$ , and if  $\pi_0 > x_0$ , then  $\pi_n \rightarrow 1$ . In most cases, we assume that  $X_0 = 1$ , so that the extinction probability is always  $x_0$ .

- If  $\mu \leq 1$ , then because  $G'' > 0$ , we conclude  $G'(x) < 1$  for all  $x \in [0, 1)$ , which forces  $x < G(x)$  for all  $x \in [0, 1)$ . We conclude that  $\pi_n \rightarrow 1$ , so populations become extinct almost surely.
- If  $\mu > 1$ , then the fact that  $G'(x)$  decreases continuously, we can conclude that  $y < G(y)$  in a suitably small neighbourhood of 1. Since  $G(0) = \rho(0) > 0$ , we conclude by the intermediate value theorem that there is a point  $x_0 \in (0, 1)$  with  $G(x_0) = x_0$ , and this gives the convergence result considered above.

The case where  $\mu = 1$  has one of the most interesting features of our model. For  $X_0 = 1$ , we conclude that  $\mathbf{E}[X_n] = 1$  for all  $n$ , but  $X_n \rightarrow 0$  almost surely. We can infer from this that  $\mathbf{E}[X_n | X_n \neq 0] = \mathbf{E}[X_n] / \pi_n \rightarrow \infty$ , so that if a population has survived for a long time, and is not extinct, we can guarantee that it has a huge population. This has applications to the theory of surnames that Gatson and Walton were reasoning about. Chinese surnames are ancient. Applying our model, we see that the names that have survived over the generations should be very prominent. There are approximately 3,000 Chinese last names in use nowadays, as compared to 12,000 in the

past, even though there are far more Chinese people in the world than in the past. This is the reason Gatson and Walton concluded upper class surnames were going extinct in Victorian Britain. The elite few who had these names were in populations that were likely to die out very soon, whereas the common names are names which will last much longer.

**Example.** Suppose  $\rho(0) = \rho(1) = 1/4$ ,  $\rho(2) = 1/2$ . Then the probability generating function is

$$G(x) = \frac{2x^2 + x + 1}{4}$$

Solving the equation  $G(x) = x$  gives  $x = 1/2$ , and this is the extinction probability of a branching process corresponding to  $\rho$  with  $X_0 = 1$ .

If  $X_0 = k$  for some  $k > 0$ , one can prove that  $X$  is identically distributed to the sum of  $k$  independent branching processes  $Y^1, \dots, Y^k$ , with  $Y_0^i = 1$ . It then follows that if we denote the probability that a population becomes extinct in  $n$  steps beginning with  $k$  people by  $\pi_n(k)$ , then

$$\pi_n(k) = \mathbf{P}(X_n = 0) = \mathbf{P}(Y_n^1 = 0, \dots, Y_n^k = 0) = \prod \mathbf{P}(Y_n^i = 0) = \pi_n^k$$

Letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$  gives  $\pi(k) = \pi^k$ . More generally, for any random variable  $X_0$  the chance of dying is equal to  $\mathbf{E}[\pi^{X_0}]$ .

**Example.** A simple variant of the branching process problem is to add the condition that some members of the population live on until the next generation to have more offspring. Thus we have a offspring distribution  $\rho$ , as well as some probability  $q \in [0, 1]$  of a particular individual dying at the end of each generation. If we assume the offspring production probabilities are independent of the probability that a member of the population dies off, then we can see this as just a case of the branching process with offspring distribution  $\nu$ , where

$$\nu(k) = q\rho(k) + (1 - q)\rho(k - 1)$$

If  $\mu$  is the mean number of offspring given by  $\rho$ , then we find that if  $Y \sim \nu$ , then we find that the mean number of offspring given by  $\nu$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k\nu(k) &= q \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k\rho(k) + (1 - q) \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k\rho(k - 1) \\ &= q\mu + (1 - q) \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (k - 1)\rho(k - 1) + (1 - q) \\ &= \mu + (1 - q) \end{aligned}$$

Thus if  $\mu \leq q$ , the population is guaranteed to become extinct, and if  $\mu > q$ , then the population can sustain itself indefinitely.

## 4.4 Martingales and Branching Asymptotics

Using the Markov property of the branching process, we know that

$$\mathbf{E}[X_{n+1} | X_1, \dots, X_n] = \mu X_n$$

If we define the process  $M_n = X_n / \mu^n$  which in some sense measures the exponential growth of the process relative to  $\mu$ , then we find

$$\mathbf{E}[M_{n+1} | M_1, \dots, M_n] = M_n$$

This means that  $M_n$  is a *martingale* with respect to its natural filtration.

Now we can calculate that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_n] = \frac{\mathbf{E}[X_n]}{\mu^n} = \frac{\mu^n \mathbf{E}[X_0]}{\mu^n} = \mathbf{E}[X_0]$$

so provided that  $\mathbf{E}[X_0] < \infty$ , we can conclude that  $M_n$  converges almost everywhere to an integrable random variable  $M_\infty$ . This means that for almost all  $\omega$ , we have  $X_n(\omega) = [M_\infty(\omega) + o(1)]\mu^n$ , so that the process essentially has exponential growth relative to  $\mu^n$ . We might be tempted to think that  $M$  is now extended to be a martingale on  $\{1, 2, \dots, \infty\}$ , but we have to be a bit more careful. For instance, if  $\mu \leq 1$ , then extinction is almost sure to happen in a finite amount of time, and we can conclude that  $M_\infty = 0$  almost everywhere (this implies  $X_n(\omega) = o(1)\mu^n$  almost surely), whereas in all but the most trivial cases  $\mathbf{E}[M_0] \neq 0$ , so  $\mathbf{E}[M_\infty] \neq \mathbf{E}[M_0]$ . However, we can calculate that if  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$  are independent random variables distributed according to  $\rho$ , then provided  $\rho$  has finite variance  $\sigma^2$ , we can conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[X_{n+1}^2 | X_n] = \mathbf{E} \left( \sum_{i=1}^{X_n} Y_i \right)^2 = \sum_{ij=1}^{X_n} \mathbf{E}[Y_i Y_j] = X_n^2 \mu^2 + X_n \sigma^2$$

so

$$\mathbf{E}[M_{n+1}^2 | M_n] = \frac{\mathbf{E}[X_{n+1}^2 | X_n]}{\mu^{2(n+1)}} = \frac{X_n^2 \mu^2 + X_n \sigma^2}{\mu^{2n+2}} = M_n^2 + \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^{n+2}} M_n$$

and in particular, this means

$$\mathbf{E}[M_{n+1}^2] = \mathbf{E}[M_n^2] + \mathbf{E}[M_n] \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^{n+2}}$$

Reexpressing the recurrence gives

$$\mathbf{E}[M_n^2] = \mathbf{E}[M_0^2] + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathbf{E}[M_k] \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^{k+2}} = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathbf{E}[M_0] \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^{k+2}}$$

This means that the martingale  $M_n$  is bounded in  $L^2(\Omega)$  if and only if  $\mu > 1$  (except if  $X_0 = 0$  of course). We may now apply Doob's  $L^2$  convergence theorem to conclude that  $M_n$  converges in the  $L^2$  norm to  $M_\infty$ , so this gives that  $M_n$  converges to  $M_\infty$  in the  $L^1$  norm. We can therefore conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_\infty] = \mathbf{E}[M_0]$$

which tells us that  $X_n$  grows on average on the order of  $\mu^n$ . What's more, we can conclude the additional fact that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{V}[M_\infty] &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{V}[M_n] = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}[M_0^2] + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathbf{E}[M_0] \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu^{k+2}} - \mathbf{E}[M_0]^2 \\ &= \mathbf{V}[M_0] + \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu(\mu-1)} \mathbf{E}[X_0] \end{aligned}$$

So  $M_\infty$  has low variance for large values of  $\mu$ , implying that the growth of  $X_n$  is more steadily close to  $\mu^n$ .

We can actually determine the distribution of  $M_\infty$  *exactly*, by using Fourier transform techniques. Unfortunately,  $M_n$  isn't defined over a discrete set, so the probability generating functions are no longer well defined, but we can consider the moment generating functions

$$H_n(t) = \mathbf{E}[e^{tM_n}] = G_n(\exp(t\mu^{-n}))$$

$$H_\infty(t) = \mathbf{E}[e^{tM_\infty}]$$

If  $t \leq 0$ , then  $e^{tM_n} \leq 1$ , because  $M_n$  is non-negative. We can therefore apply the dominated convergence theorem to conclude

$$H_\infty(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} H_n(t)$$

This allows us to compute  $H_\infty$  on an interval, which by the analytic properties of the function will enable us, in theory, to calculate the distribution of  $M_\infty$ . In practice, however, this is only computable in the most basic of examples.

We can derive a functional equation which will enable us to calculate  $H_\infty$ . Note that if  $X_0 = 1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} H_{n+1}(\mu t) &= G_{n+1}(\exp(t\mu^{-n})) \\ &= G^{n+1}(\exp(t\mu^{-n})) \\ &= G(G^n(\exp(t\mu^{-n}))) = G(H_n(t)) \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$  on both sides tells us that  $H_\infty(\mu t) = G(H_\infty(t))$ .

**Example.** In the example  $\rho(0) = \rho(1) = 1/4$ ,  $\rho(2) = 1/2$ , we conclude that for  $t \leq 0$

$$H_\infty(5t/4) = \frac{1 + H_\infty(t) + 2H_\infty(t)^2}{4}$$

If we assume  $H_\infty(-1) = \alpha$ , then

$$\alpha = \frac{1 + H_\infty(-4/5) + 2H_\infty(-4/5)^2}{4}$$

$$0 = \frac{1 - 4\alpha + H_\infty(-4/5) + 2H_\infty(-4/5)^2}{4}$$

$$H_\infty(-4/5) = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{1 - 8(1 - 4\alpha)}}{4} = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{32\alpha - 7}}{4}$$

so  $32\alpha \geq 8$ , hence  $\alpha \geq 1/4$ . But it seems impossible to calculate the actual iterates of this map, so we can't calculate the actual distribution – however, we can use a computer to approximate these limits, and then perform an inverse transform to calculate the distribution of  $M_\infty$  approximately.

**Example.** About the only mathematically feasible example where we can compute the distribution is when the number of children have a geometric distribution  $\rho(k) = pq^k$ , for some  $0 < p < 1$ ,  $q = 1 - p$ . One way to think about the geometric distribution is as the distribution of waiting times until we see a first success in a series of independent Bernoulli trials, each with a success probability  $p$ . Thus we can see this example as where people keep having children as many times as possible, until the first failure (a miscarriage?) which causes

the generation to die off. Now we can check that the probability generating function of this distribution is

$$G(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p(qt)^k = \frac{p}{1-qt}$$

hence

$$G'(t) = \frac{pq}{(1-qt)^2}$$

and so

$$\mu = G'(1) = \frac{pq}{(1-q)^2} = \frac{q}{p}$$

we immediately see that if  $q \leq p$  ( $p \geq 1/2$ ), then the population is guaranteed to become extinct, and if  $q > p$ , then since

$$G(p/q) = \frac{p}{1-p} = p/q$$

we conclude the extinction probability is  $p/q$ . The nice fact about  $G$  is that it is a rational function of  $t$ , represented by the Möbius transformation

$$G(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p \\ -q & 1 \end{pmatrix} (t)$$

Thus

$$G^n(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p \\ -q & 1 \end{pmatrix}^n (t)$$

and by diagonalization, we can calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p \\ -q & 1 \end{pmatrix}^n &= \frac{1}{q-p} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & p \\ 1 & q \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p^n & 0 \\ 0 & q^n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q & -p \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{q-p} \begin{pmatrix} p^n & pq^n \\ p^n & q^{n+1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} q & -p \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{q-p} \begin{pmatrix} p^n q - pq^n & pq^n - p^{n+1} \\ p^n q - q^{n+1} & q^{n+1} - p^{n+1} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{p^{n+1}}{q-p} \begin{pmatrix} \mu - \mu^n & \mu^n - 1 \\ \mu - \mu^{n+1} & \mu^{n+1} - 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

so that

$$G^n(t) = \frac{p\mu^n(1-t) + qt - p}{q\mu^n(1-t) + qt - p}$$

If  $\mu < 1$ ,  $G^n(t) \rightarrow 1$ , reflecting the fact that the process eventually dies out (the moment generating function of the dirac delta distribution is the constant 1 distribution). If  $\mu = 1$ , then this calculation doesn't quite work, but a modification shows  $G^n(t) \rightarrow 1$  also. If  $\mu > 1$ , then we can calculate that

$$\begin{aligned} H_\infty(t) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} H_n(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} G_n(\exp(-t/\mu^n)) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{p\mu^n(1 - e^{-t/\mu^n}) + qe^{-t/\mu^n} - p}{q\mu^n(1 - e^{-t/\mu^n}) + qe^{-t/\mu^n} - p} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{pt + q - p + O(t/\mu^n)}{qt + q - p + O(t/\mu^n)} = \frac{pt + q - p}{qt + q - p} \\ &= \frac{\pi t + (1 - \pi)}{t + (1 - \pi)} = \pi + \frac{(1 - \pi)^2}{t + (1 - \pi)} \\ &= \pi + \int_0^\infty (1 - \pi)^2 e^{-tx} e^{-(1-\pi)x} dx \end{aligned}$$

where  $\pi = p/q$  is the extinction probability. It follows that  $\mathbf{P}(M_\infty = 0) = \pi$ , and on  $(0, \infty)$ ,  $M_\infty$  is a continous random variable with distribution function

$$f_{M_\infty} = (1 - \pi)^2 e^{-(1-\pi)x}$$

which is certainly an interesting result.

It turns out that, though  $M_\infty = 0$  almost surely when  $\mu \leq 1$ , we can still determine interesting asymptotic results when  $\mu < 1$ . Indeed, we ask what the distribution of  $M_n$  is, conditional on the fact that  $M_n \neq 0$ . Then

$$\mathbf{E}[t^{X_n} | X_n \neq 0] = \frac{G_n(t) - G_n(0)}{1 - G_n(0)} = \frac{\alpha_n t}{1 - \beta_n t}$$

where

$$\alpha_n = \frac{p - q}{p - q\mu^n} \quad \beta_n = \frac{q(1 - \mu^n)}{p - q\mu^n}$$

so  $0 < \alpha_n < 1$  and  $\alpha_n + \beta_n = 1$ . As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\alpha_n \rightarrow 1 - \mu$ ,  $\beta_n \rightarrow \mu$ , so

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P}(X_n = k | X_n \neq 0) = (1 - \mu)\mu^{k-1}$$

so we see that the distribution grows asymptotically exponentially. If  $\mu = 1$ , then one can see by induction that

$$G_n(t) = \frac{n - (n-1)t}{(n+1) - nt}$$

and that

$$\mathbf{E}(e^{-tX_n/n} | X_n \neq 0) \rightarrow \frac{1}{1+t}$$

which corresponds to

$$\mathbf{P}(X_n/n > x | X_n \neq 0) \rightarrow e^{-x}$$

so we get a form of logarithmic growth.



# Chapter 5

## Reversibility

Some Markov chains have a certain symmetry which enables us to easily understand them. If we watch the markov chain as it proceeds from state to state, it forms a kind of ‘movie’. A Markov chain is reversible if the markov chain has the same probability distribution when we watch the movie backwards. That is, if  $X_0, X_1, \dots, X_n$  are the first few frames of the movie, then  $(X_0, \dots, X_n)$  is distributed identically to  $(X_n, \dots, X_0)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_0(x_0)P(x_0, x_1) \dots P(x_{n-1}, x_n) &= \mathbf{P}(X_0 = x_0, \dots, X_n = x_n) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(X_0 = x_n, \dots, X_n = x_n) = \mu_0(x_n)P(x_n, x_{n-1}) \dots P(x_1, x_0)\end{aligned}$$

Normally, being pairwise identically distributed is not enough to determine the independence of a larger family of variables. Nonetheless, in a homogenous markov chain, we need only verify the chain for pairs.

**Definition.** A Markov chain is **reversible** if there is a measure  $\mu$  (which need not be a probability distribution) for which, for any two states  $x, y \in \mathcal{S}$ ,

$$\mu(x)P(x, y) = \mu(y)P(y, x)$$

It follows that, if  $\mu$  is a probability distribution, then  $(X_0, X_1, \dots, X_n)$  is identically distributed to  $(X_n, \dots, X_0)$ , given that  $\mu$  is the initial distribution of the chain.

**Example.** Any symmetric markov chain (with  $P(x, y) = P(y, x)$ ) is reversible, with  $\mu(x) = 1$  for all  $x$ .

**Example.** Consider a random walk on a graph  $G = (V, E)$ . Let  $\mu(x) = \deg(x)$ . Then

$$\mu(x)P(x, y) = 1 = \mu(y)P(y, x)$$

So the walk is reversible with respect to  $\mu$ .

Now let  $\mu_0$  be a reversible measure generating a reversible markov chain  $\{X_t\}$ . Suppose we watch a markov chain  $(X_0, \dots, X_N)$  for a really large  $N$ . Then, if a limiting distribution exists, it mustn't be too different from  $\mu_N$ . If we watch the markov chain backwards  $(X_N, \dots, X_0)$ , then it is equal in distribution by the properties of a markov chain. In particular, this means that the distribution of  $\mu_0$  is also the result of watching a Markov chain for a really long time – so we should expect  $\mu_0$  to be really close to the limiting distribution of the markov chain. In fact, since  $\mu(x)P(x, y) = \mu(y)P(y, x)$ , we have

$$\mu(x) = \sum_y \mu(y)P(y, x) = \sum_y \mu(y)P(y, x) = (\mu P)(x)$$

So  $\mu$  is an invariant distribution, and is the convergent probability distribution on an ergodic markov chain.

In the past few chapters, we have thoroughly addressed the problem of finding the limiting distribution of a stochastic process. We now address the converse problem. We are given an invariant measure, and we must construct a markov process which has this invariant measure for an invariant distribution. This is useful for approximating the invariant distribution when it is computationally too difficult to calculate.

For instance, consider the set of all  $N \times N$  matrices with entries in  $\{0, 1\}$ . We may assign the uniform distribution to these matrices. There are  $2^{N^2}$  different matrices of this form, so the probability of any matrix being picked is  $1/2^{N^2}$ . What about if we consider the set  $\mathcal{T}$  of all matrices such that no two entries of the matrix are one at the same time. At face-value, there is no immediate formula we may use to count these matrices. Nonetheless, if we construct a markov chain whose limiting distribution is the uniform distribution, we can approximate the number of matrices by simulation – we just count the average number of times a matrix is visited out of a certain number of trials.

Consider a markov chain with the following transition. We start with an initial matrix  $X_0$  in  $\mathcal{T}$ , and we pick a random entry  $(i, j)$ . Let  $Y$  be

the matrix resultant from flipping the  $X_{ij}$  on or off. If  $Y \in \mathcal{T}$ , let  $X_1 = Y$ . Otherwise, let  $X_1 = X$ . Continue this process indefinitely. This is an irreducible, symmetric markov process in  $\mathcal{T}$ , with transitions

$$P(A, B) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{N^2} & : A \text{ and } B \text{ differ by one entry} \\ 1 - \sum_{C \neq A} P(A, C) & : B = A \\ 0 & : \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Since the Markov chain is symmetric, the distribution converges to the uniform distribution on all of  $\mathcal{T}$  – and we can use this to attempt to determine the distribution on the set.

How do we simulate a Markov chain? We shall accept that a computer is able to generate psuedorandom numbers distributed uniformly on any finite state space and on an interval  $[0, 1]$ . A **random mapping representation** of a markov chain  $\{X_i\}$  is a function  $f : \mathcal{S} \times \Lambda \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  together with a  $\Lambda$ -valued random variable  $Z$  for which

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{n+1} = x_{n+1} | X_n = x) = \mathbf{P}(f(x, Z) \in x_{n+1})$$

If we generate a sequence  $Z_1, \dots, \infty$  of random variables independant and identically distributed to  $Z$ , Then  $X_{n+1} = f(X_n, Z_{n+1})$ . Conversely, we can use a random mapping representation to generate a markov chain.

There is a general method by which we can construct a markov chain to converge to a distribution. Suppose we have a distribution  $\beta$  defined on a state space  $\mathcal{S}$ , with  $\sum \beta(x) = B < \infty$ . In addition, assume that we already have a symmetric state transition set  $P$ . We shall use this state to generate a new process. Define a Markov chain with probabilities

$$P'(x, y) = P(x, y) \min(1, \frac{\beta(y)}{\beta(x)}) \quad x \neq y$$

$$P'(x, x) = 1 - \sum_{y \neq x} P'(x, y)$$

We ‘slow’ down the chain at certain points to make it reversible with respect to  $\beta$ , and hence converges to  $\mu = \beta/B$ . This is the Metropolis-Hastings algorithm for computing a distribution  $\beta$  up to a multiplicative constant. It is important that the algorithm only depends on the ratios of  $\beta$ . Frequently,  $\beta$  is of the form  $h(x)/Z$  for some very large normalizing constant  $Z$ . Because the algorithm only depends on the ratios, we do not need to calculate  $\beta$  at all.

# Chapter 6

## Discrete Time Martingales

### 6.1 Filtrations

As a stochastic process evolves, the values we observe give us more and more information into the future of the process. We can model this ‘increase’ in information in a measure theoretic manner, by a **filtration**, which is just an increasing family of  $\sigma$  algebras  $\Sigma_0 \subset \Sigma_1 \subset \dots$ , representing information that is available at a given time, which should increase over time as we learn more and more states of the process. It is the measure theoretic equivalent of a topological filter. Without a filtration, it would be difficult to think of the indices  $\{0, 1, \dots\}$  as time, because the order in which the random variables are given in the process is fairly immaterial to the analysis, except for limits at  $\infty$ .

**Example.** Let  $X_0, X_1, \dots$  be a stochastic process. The **natural filtration** corresponding to  $X$  is the filtration  $\Sigma_n = \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$ , which represents the information given over time if we receive the values  $X_0, X_1, \dots$  sequentially.

This is not the only filtration which occurs in probability theory, though it is often the natural filtration to use. The reason for this is often we have more information to bear about a given statistical situation than just a single measurement. For instance, the payout in a particular game of poker is certainly an important information to keep in mind to come up with future strategies, but one also needs to keep in mind the behaviour of the other players, which enable us to predict a player’s future behaviour.

**Example.** Consider a family  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  of fair  $\{0, 1\}$  valued Bernoulli random variables, and the corresponding sums  $S_n = \sum_{k \leq n} X_k$ . Consider an independent random walk  $Y$  with  $\{\pm 1\}$  fair Bernoulli increments, and then consider the process

$$Z_n = Y_n + \lfloor S_n/m \rfloor$$

which mimics the random walk  $Y$ , except that when  $S_n$  reaches certain increments the random walk drifts one step upwards. If we are able to observe the random variables  $X_i$  and the  $Z_n$ , then the natural filtration to use in this situation is

$$\Sigma_n = \sigma(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n, Z_1, \dots, Z_n) = \sigma(X_1, \dots, X_n, Y_1, \dots, Y_n)$$

which contains much more information than the natural filtration with respect to the  $Z_n$ , because now with the values  $X_i$  we can anticipate when the next ‘shift’ will happen.

It is often interesting to consider the limiting  $\sigma$  algebra  $\Sigma_\infty = \lim \Sigma_n$ , which represents all the information we could ever be able to obtain by looking at the stochastic process. For instance, given a random variable  $X$ , we can consider the sequence

$$\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_0), \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_1), \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_2), \dots$$

and we can measure how ‘smoothly’ we are given information about  $X$  by discussing the convergence of  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_n)$  to  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_\infty)$ . If the sequence converges nicely, this means we consistently learn all we need to know about the function.

## 6.2 Martingales

We wish to discuss stochastic processes  $X_0, X_1, \dots$  representing a ‘fair bet’. Each point of time in the process represents the amount of money in a gambler’s pocket. If we have a certain amount of money at a time, and we watch the process evolve, we should expect us to find the same amount of money with us on average, so that the bets we made were fair. This should be stronger than the simple condition that the  $\mathbf{E}(X_i)$  are all equal to one another, but that the expectation shouldn’t change over time even if we know how much money we have in our pocket at any moment. This is where our new definition of conditional expectation comes into play. A **martingale**

with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma_0, \Sigma_1, \dots$  is a process  $M_0, M_1, \dots$  consisting of integrable random variables such that, for  $m \leq n$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(M_n | \Sigma_m) = M_m$  (by the tower rule, we need only verify this for  $n = m + 1$ ). Though it is helpful to think of these processes as modelling gambling, they seem to crop up in almost every aspect of probability theory.

**Example.** Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be a sequence of independent, integrable random variables with mean zero. Define  $S_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$  to be the ‘random walk’ with respect to these random variables, with  $S_0 = 0$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{E}(S_n | X_1, \dots, X_{n-1}) &= X_1 + \dots + X_{n-1} + \mathbf{E}(X_n | X_1, \dots, X_{n-1}) \\ &= S_{n-1} + \mathbf{E}(X_n) = S_{n-1}\end{aligned}$$

Thus  $S_n$  is a martingale relative to the filtration induced by  $X_1, X_2, \dots$ . Because

$$\sigma(S_1, \dots, S_n) = \sigma(X_1, \dots, X_n)$$

is is also a martingale relative to the natural filtration.

**Example.** As in the last example, consider a sequence of independent non-negative integrable random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots$ , but now with mean 1 rather than 0. If we define  $M_0 = 1$ ,  $M_n = X_1 \dots X_n$ , then

$$\mathbf{E}(M_{n+1} | X_1, \dots, X_n) = M_n \mathbf{E}(X_{n+1} | X_1, \dots, X_n) = M_n \mathbf{E}(X_{n+1}) = M_n$$

so  $M$  is a martingale (the product of two integrable independent random variables is also integrable). It is also a martingale with respect to the natural filtration on the  $M_n$ , though this time it is possible that

$$\sigma(M_1, \dots, M_n) \neq \sigma(X_1, \dots, X_n)$$

The intuition being that if  $X_i = 0$  at some point, then  $M_i = \dots = M_n = 0$ , so we do not obtain as much information about  $X_{i+1}, \dots, X_n$ .

**Example.** If  $X$  is an integrable random variable, and  $\Sigma$  is any filtration, then the tower law gives

$$\mathbf{E}[\mathbf{E}[X | \Sigma_{n+1}] | \Sigma_n] = \mathbf{E}[X | \Sigma_n]$$

so the process  $\mathbf{E}[X | \Sigma_n]$  is a martingale with respect to  $\Sigma_n$ .

It will be helpful to consider more general processes than the fair bets that martingales represent. More generally, we say  $M$  is a **submartingale** if  $\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_m) \geq M_m$ , and  $M$  is a **supermartingale** if  $\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_m) \leq M_m$ . A submartingale is a game that is consistently in the player's favour, and a supermartingale is consistently a game against the player. The names are often confusing, for we would imagine supermartingales to increase, and submartingales to decrease. There are reasons for these names, connected to the theory of superharmonic and subharmonic functions. We are stuck with these names, and one can remember this by remembering that submartingales increase, and supermartingales decrease. We need only verify the defining property for  $\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_{n-1})$ , because we can apply the tower rule to obtain the general property recursively.

### 6.3 Optional Stopping Theorem

We begin with an extension of the 'gambling' concept of martingales. Note that an equivalent condition for a process  $M$  to be a martingale is that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_{n+1} - M_n | \Sigma_n] = 0$$

for all  $n$ . The value of  $M_{n+1} - M_n$  can be seen to represent the payout for a unit bet on a particular 'game' in a series of games. These 'games' are fair, because the amount of money we make is 0, given all possible information about the previous games. We can come up with a family of martingales from a single martingale  $M$  by changing the bet on the game  $n$  from a unit amount to an arbitrary random stake  $C_n$  which doesn't 'cheat' by looking into the future outcome of games. This condition is specified by saying  $C_n$  is **previsible**, in that it is  $\Sigma_{n-1}$  measurable. The total amount of money we make by game  $n$  is then

$$(C \bullet M)_n = \sum_{k=1}^n C_k (M_k - M_{k-1})$$

It is easy to verify that if each  $C$  is constant, then  $C \bullet M$  is a Martingale. More generally, if  $C_n$  is previsible, and is in  $L^q(\Omega)$  whenever  $M_k - M_{k-1} \in L^p(\Omega)$ , then  $C \bullet M$  will be an integrable martingale. We call  $C \bullet M$  the **discrete Itô integral** or **martingale transform** of  $C$  with respect to  $M$ . If  $M$  is a (super/sub) martingale, then  $C \bullet M$  will be a (super/sub) martingale as well.

**Example.** Suppose we enter a casino with an initial monetary amount  $X_0$ , where we play a series of independant games  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$  with  $\mathbf{P}(Y_i = 1) = p$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(Y_i = -1) = q$ . To be realistic, our stakes in a particular gambling game must be bounded by the amount of money at a particular time. In particular, this means that if we choose stakes  $C_k$ , and then consider

$$X_n = X_0 + (C \bullet Y)_n$$

Then  $0 \leq C_n \leq X_n$  at all times. Obviously, our aim is to choose our betting strategy  $C_n$  to maximize the value of  $X_N$  at some particular game  $N$ . Since

$$\mathbf{E}[X_{n+1}|X_n] = X_n + (p - q)C_{n+1}$$

if  $p < q$ , then  $X_n$  will always be a submartingale, and it will be a martingale only if  $C_n = 0$  almost surely, so we should never choose to gamble. If  $p = q$ ,  $X_n$  will always be a martingale, so a given strategy to arbitrary. If  $p > q$ , things are more interesting. We will now attempt to maximizing the 'average interest rate'  $\log(X_N/X_0)$ , which measures the exponential growth from playing  $N$  games. We calculate that if  $\Sigma_n = \sigma(X_1, \dots, X_n, Y_1, \dots, Y_n)$ , then

$$\mathbf{E}[\log(X_{n+1})|\Sigma_n] = p \log(X_n + C_{n+1}) + q \log(X_n - C_{n+1})$$

We now attempt to choose  $\alpha > 0$  such that

$$p \log(X_n + C_{n+1}) + q \log(X_n - C_{n+1}) \leq X_n + \log \alpha$$

It then follows that  $\log(X_n) - n\alpha$  is a supermartingale, so  $\mathbf{E}[\log(X_n/X_0)] \leq n\alpha$  bounds the growth of the martingale. Since  $0 \leq C_{n+1} \leq X_n$ , we calculate using elementary calculus that

$$\max_{0 \leq y \leq x} p \log(x + y) + q \log(x - y) = 2p^p q^q x$$

which is attained when  $y = (p - q)x$ . It follows that

$$\mathbf{E}[\log(X_n/X_0)] \leq n(\log 2 + p \log p + q \log q)$$

we call  $\log 2 + p \log p + q \log q$  the entropy of the game. It follows that in order to maximize the average interest rate, we should set  $C_n = (p - q)X_{n-1}$ .



Probability was created to analyze gambling games, and martingale theory was to analyze one particular area of gambling theory. In the 18th century, a strategy was discovered which could be applied to ‘beat’ certain gambling games, guaranteeing a profit whenever it was applied. It became known as the martingale. Let’s consider the strategy in its simplest implementation, when gambling on a flip of a coin. We take a series of  $\{-1, 1\}$  valued independent Bernoulli trials  $X_1, X_2, \dots$ , and define  $M_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$  to be the unit stakes turnout of a bet against these coin flips. We then consider the martingale  $C \bullet M$ , where  $M$  is a martingale, and when  $C_k = 2^k$ , so our bet ‘doubles’ each time. If  $X_n = 1$ , then

$$(C \bullet M)_n = \sum_{k=1}^n 2^k X_k = 2^n + \sum_{k=1}^n 2^k X_k \geq 1$$

Thus, if we bet along this strategy until the first time that  $X_n = 1$ , in which case we ‘stop’ the betting process, we will always come out with at least a unit profit. More rigorously, if we define the ‘stopping time’  $T$  to be the first time  $n$  that  $X_n = 1$  (a random quantity), then  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ , and  $(C \bullet M)_T \geq 1$ , so we’ve found a guaranteed way to beat the casino! The Martingale soon became all the rage in the 18th century. Casanova was one of many famous figures known to apply the strategy to his own games. The key problem with the strategy is that it assumes one is able to bet with an infinite amount of money. When we have a finite amount of money, we’re running a gambler’s ruin – we either bet until we run out of money, or gain a single unit of money. Thus, if you don’t have much cash, the strategy is somewhat risky, and if you have a lot of cash, you have a lot to lose if you stop betting.

At first, this seems to contradict the fact that for any series of previsible stakes  $C$ ,  $C \bullet M$  is a martingale. However, the problem with the martingale analysis is that we are ‘changing time’. If we consider the modified stakes

$$C_n^{(T)} = \begin{cases} C_n & n \leq T \\ 0 & n > T \end{cases}$$

which model the outcomes of the bet  $n$  steps into the future if we stop betting at time  $T$ . The modified stakes are still previsible, because  $\{n \leq T\}$  is the complement of the event  $\{T < n\}$ , which is  $\Sigma_{n-1}$  adapted because it depends only on the variables  $X_1, \dots, X_{n-1}$ . Since the modified stakes are

bounded by  $C_n$ , we conclude that  $C^{(T)} \bullet M$  is still a martingale, so that in particular, for each  $n$ ,

$$\mathbf{E}[(C^{(T)} \bullet M)_n] = \mathbf{E}[(C^{(T)} \bullet M)_0] = 0$$

and therefore from the perspective of finite time, the bet is still ‘fair’. This argument shows that this remains true if  $T$  is any  $\{0, 1, \dots, \infty\}$  valued process such that the event  $\{T \leq n\}$  is  $\Sigma_n$  adapted, and we call such a  $T$  a **stopping time**. We have the equality

$$(C^{(T)} \bullet M)_n = (C \bullet M)_{T \wedge n}$$

which implies the next result.

**Theorem 6.1.** *If  $M$  is a (sub/super) martingale, and  $T$  is a stopping time, then the **stopped process**  $M_n^T = M_{T \wedge n}$  is a (sub/super) martingale.*

*Proof.*  $M^T = C \bullet M$ , where  $C = \mathbf{I}(n \leq T)$ , and the last argument applies.  $\square$

So paradoxically, it now seems like the betting strategy corresponding to  $T$  and  $C$  is fair, because at each finite time point, the average amount of money in the gambler’s pocket is zero. The difference between the two analyses is that we have a pointwise limit

$$(C \bullet M)_T = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (C^{(T)} \bullet M)_n$$

and even though this limit holds, we find

$$\mathbf{E}((C \bullet M)_0) = 0 < 1 \leq \mathbf{E}((C \bullet M)_T)$$

so we cannot extend  $C^{(T)} \bullet M$  to be a martingale ‘at  $\infty$ ’, or rather, we cannot extend  $C \bullet M$  to be a martingale at  $T$ . This is one of many examples where the expectation operator does not play as nicely as we would like with respect to pointwise convergence. Here is another example.

**Example.** *Consider a simple reflecting random walk  $M$  on  $\mathbf{N}$  starting at 0. Then  $M$  is a martingale. If we consider the stopping time  $T = \inf\{n : M_n = 1\}$ , then it is easy to see  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ , and even though  $\mathbf{E}(M_n^T) = \mathbf{E}(M_0^T) = 0$ , we find  $M_T = 1$ , so we cannot extend the stopped martingale to a martingale in the limit.*

The optional stopping theorem says that, provided we limit the behaviour of a martingale and its stopping time, the martingale still behaves well as a martingale in a limit, so that the bet is still fair asymptotically. From the discussion above, the optional stopping theorem fits in the family of results, such as the monotone convergence theorem, dominated convergence theorem, and so on, which say that expectation does play nicely with pointwise convergence given certain additional conditions. One such condition we could place is that the stakes  $C_n$  are bounded. This is the reason why limits are placed on poker and blackjack tables. Effectively, the casino restricts the martingales you can choose to play, so that regardless of the ‘stopping time’ you choose to play while gambling, the martingale strategy won’t give you an edge over the casino.

The essential part of the analysis governing the optional stopping theorem is to write

$$M_T = M_{T \wedge n} + \mathbf{I}(T > n)(M_T - M_n)$$

Provided  $\mathbf{I}(T > n)M_T$  and  $\mathbf{I}(T > n)M_n$  become small in expectation, we can obtain the result. We can do this either by bounding  $T$ ’s behaviour at  $\infty$  or bounding  $M$ ’s behaviour.

**Theorem 6.2** (The Optional Stopping Theorem). *If  $M$  is a supermartingale,  $T$  is a stopping time,  $\mathbf{E}[M_T] < \infty$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty)$ , and*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\{T > n\}} |M_n| = 0$$

*Then  $\mathbf{E}[M_T] \leq \mathbf{E}[M_0]$ . In particular, the conditions of this theorem hold automatically if*

- *$T$  is bounded.*
- *$M$  is bounded, and  $T$  is almost surely finite.*

*Another case where the optional stopping theorem holds is where  $\mathbf{E}(T) < \infty$ , and the Martingale increments are bounded, so that there is a universal  $K$  such that  $|M_{n+1} - M_n| \leq K$  almost surely. For non-negative supermartingales in particular, if  $T < \infty$  almost surely then  $\mathbf{E}[M_T] \leq \mathbf{E}[M_0]$ . Finally, if  $M$  is a uniformly integrable martingale,  $T$  is finite almost surely, and  $M_T \in L^1(\Omega)$ .*

*Proof.* We note that for each  $n$ ,

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] = \mathbf{E}[M_n^T] + \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{I}(T > n)(M_T - M_n)] \leq \mathbf{E}[M_0] + \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{I}(T > n)(M_T - M_n)]$$

as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , the integrality hypothesis guarantees that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] \leq \mathbf{E}[M_0] + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\{T > n\}} M_T = \mathbf{E}[M_0]$$

where the last integral converges to zero because we assumed  $M_T \in L^1(\Omega)$  and  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ . To address the final case, we note that if there is a constant  $K$  such that  $|M_{n+1} - M_n| \leq K$  almost surely, then

$$|M_n^T - M_0| = |M_{T \wedge n} - M_0| = \left| \sum_{k=1}^{T \wedge n} (M_k - M_{k-1}) \right| \leq KT$$

so  $|M_n^T|$  is bounded by an  $L^1(\Omega)$  function  $|M_0| + KT$ , so we can again apply the dominated convergence theorem to conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}[M_n^T] \leq \mathbf{E}[M_0]$$

If  $M_n$  is a non-negative supermartingale, then we can apply Fatou's lemma to  $M_n^T$  to conclude

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] = \mathbf{E}[\liminf M_n^T] \leq \liminf \mathbf{E}[M_n^T] = \mathbf{E}[M_0]$$

so the proof is easy in this case. Finally, if  $M$  is uniformly integrable, and  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ , then  $\mathbf{P}(T > n) \rightarrow 0$ , and by uniform integrability, we conclude

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}(|M_n|; T > n) = 0$$

Provided  $\mathbf{E}|M_T| < \infty$ , we can apply the standard result above.  $\square$

**Example.** Consider a variant of the gambler's ruin problem, where we start with  $A$  units of money, and play a fair game until we go bust, or stop playing when we end up with  $B$  units of money. In particular, let's consider the problem where the games are fair  $\{\pm 1\}$  valued Bernoulli trials, so the amount of money in the gambler's pocket is modelled by the martingale

$$M_n = A + X_1 + \cdots + X_n$$

We can let  $T$  be the stopping time representing the first time when  $M_T = 0$  or  $M_T = B$ . Now  $M_n$  might not be a bounded process, but  $M_n^T$  is a bounded process, because  $0 \leq M_n^T \leq B$ , and since  $\mathbf{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ , we can apply the optional stopping theorem to conclude that

$$\mathbf{BP}(M_T = A) = \mathbf{E}[M_T] = \mathbf{E}[M_T^T] = \mathbf{E}[M_0] = A$$

hence the probability that a gambler actually succeeds in making the money they desired is  $A/B$ . If we instead consider the martingale

$$N_n = M_n^2 - n$$

Then  $N_n$  is also a martingale. Now  $N^T$  is not necessarily a bounded martingale, but by general properties of Markov processes on a finite state space, we know there is  $0 < \rho < 1$  such that  $\mathbf{P}(T > n) = O(\rho^n)$ , and since we have  $|N_n| \leq \max(n, B^2 - n) = O(n)$ , we conclude

$$\int_{\{T > n\}} |N_n| = O(n\rho^n) \rightarrow 0$$

and therefore we can apply the optional stopping theorem to conclude that

$$A^2 = \mathbf{E}[N_0] = \mathbf{E}[N_T] = \mathbf{E}[M_T^2] - \mathbf{E}[T] = (A/B)B^2 - \mathbf{E}[T]$$

Rearranging this equation gives  $\mathbf{E}[T] = A(B - A)$ , which is the expected time before the gambler will finish playing.

**Example.** Consider a monkey typing randomly on a typewriter. For any particular sequence of characters, the monkey will type them eventually almost surely. Using the optional sampling theorem, we can calculate the expected time until the monkey types a given sequence. Consider the word “ABRACADABRA”. Consider a bookie, which places bets on a particular character being typed at 26 : 1 odds, until the monkey finishes typing “ABRACADABRA”, in which case the bookie immediately closes, and no-one can continue betting. Consider a man who enters the bookie at time  $n$  with a single dollar, and makes successive bets on the next character being A, B, R, A, and so on, until the bet is lost, in which case the man has no money, and leaves. Of course, if the casino closes, the man has to leave anyway, but gets to keep all the money he’s earnt so far. Formally, we let  $T$  be the stopping time where “ABRACADABRA” is finished being spelt, on the man loses his bet. If  $M$  denotes the amount of money

in the man's pocket at a given time, then  $M$  is a martingale.  $T$  is bounded, so we can apply the optional stopping theorem to conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] = \mathbf{E}[M_0] = 1$$

but also, we calculate that the only time the gambler can leave the casino with money is if the casino closes before he starts betting (he keeps the dollar he started with), the monkey spells "ABRACADABRA" starting at time  $n$ , in which case he makes  $26^{10}$  dollars, the casino closes after his first bet, in which case he makes 26 dollars, or the casino closes after the fourth bet, in which case he makes  $26^4$  dollars, and then if we let  $p_n = \mathbf{P}(T = n)$ , then

$$\mathbf{E}[M_T] = \mathbf{P}(T < n) + 26 \mathbf{P}(T = n) + 26^4 \mathbf{P}(T = n + 4) + 26^{10} \mathbf{P}(T = n + 10)$$

Thus for any  $n \geq 1$ ,

$$\mathbf{P}(T \geq n) = 26p_n + 26^4 p_{n+4} + 26^{10} p_{n+10}$$

If we sum this equation over all values of  $n$ , we conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[T] = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 26p_n + 26^4 p_{n+4} + 26^{10} p_{n+10} = 26 + 26^4 + 26^{10}$$

The same technique can be used to calculate the expected time we wait until a monkey types any sequence of characters, where we determine which prefixes of the sequence are also suffixes of the word. Regardless, one can argue that the expected waiting time for a sequence of length  $n$  is bounded below by  $26^n$ , and bounded above by  $(1 + 1/25)26^n$ , which is quite a tight exponential bound for the waiting time.

**Example.** Consider, like in the last example, a random walk  $S_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$  given by fair independent  $\{\pm 1\}$  valued Bernoulli random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots$ , with  $S_0 = 0$ . We now show how one can use generating function methods in combination with martingale methods to calculate the distribution of the stopping time  $T$ , which is the first time that  $S_T = 1$ . Note that if  $X$  is Bernoulli, then

$$\mathbf{E}[e^{tX}] = \frac{e^t + e^{-t}}{2} = \cosh(t)$$

so  $\mathbf{E}[(\operatorname{sech} t)e^{tX}] = 1$ , and therefore the sequence of random variables

$$M_n^t = (\operatorname{sech} t)^n e^{tS_n}$$

is a martingale, with  $M_0^t = 1$ . If  $t > 0$ , then  $e^{tS_{T \wedge n}} \leq e^t$ , and if  $T = \infty$ , then  $M_n^t \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  since  $S_n \leq 0$  for all  $n$ , hence if we define  $M_T = 0$  if  $T = \infty$ , and  $M_T$  canonically otherwise, then the optional stopping theorem gives

$$1 = \mathbf{E}[M_T^t] = \mathbf{E}[(\text{sech } t)^T] e^t$$

Hence  $\mathbf{E}[(\text{sech } t)^T] = e^{-t}$ . As  $t \rightarrow 0$ ,  $(\text{sech } t)^T \rightarrow 1$  pointwise monotonely if  $T < \infty$ , and  $(\text{sech } t)^T \rightarrow 0$  if  $T = \infty$  monotonely, hence the monotone convergence theorem guarantees that

$$1 = \mathbf{P}(T < \infty)$$

Now if  $\alpha = \text{sech } t$ , we conclude using the binomial theorem that

$$\mathbf{E}(\alpha^T) = \sum \alpha^n \mathbf{P}(T = n) = e^{-t} = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - \alpha^2}}{\alpha} = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{m+1} \binom{1/2}{m} \alpha^{2m-1}$$

$$\text{Hence } \mathbf{P}(T = 2m - 1) = (-1)^{m+1} \binom{1/2}{m}.$$

In most applications of the optional stopping theorem, we want to bound the expected value of  $T$ . This uses the probabilistic principle that ‘whatever has a reasonable chance of happening, will almost surely happen infinitely often’. The particular application is described in the next lemma.

**Lemma 6.3.** *Suppose  $T$  is a stopping time such that for some integer  $N$  and some  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we have  $\mathbf{P}(T \leq n + N | \Sigma_n) > \varepsilon$  almost surely. Then  $\mathbf{E}(T) < \infty$ .*

*Proof.* We calculate that

$$\mathbf{P}(T > N) = 1 - \mathbf{P}(T \leq n + N) \leq 1 - \varepsilon$$

By induction, we calculate that  $\mathbf{P}(T > kN) \leq (1 - \varepsilon)^k$ , by checking that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(T > (k+1)N) &= \mathbf{P}(T > kN) - \mathbf{P}((k+1)N \geq T > kN) \\ &\leq (1 - \varepsilon)^k - \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{P}[(k+1)N \geq T > kN | \Sigma_{kN}]) \\ &\leq (1 - \varepsilon)^k - \mathbf{E}(\chi_{\{T > kN\}} \mathbf{P}[(k+1)N \geq T | \Sigma_{kN}]) \\ &\leq (1 - \varepsilon)^k - \varepsilon \mathbf{P}(T > kN) = (1 - \varepsilon)^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{E}(T) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{P}(T \geq n) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{P}(T \geq n) + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} N \mathbf{P}(T > nK) \\
&\leq \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{P}(T \geq n) + N/\varepsilon < \infty
\end{aligned}$$

and this bound completes the proof.  $\square$

## 6.4 Martingale Convergence Theorems

In many cases, we want to analyze the asymptotic properties of Martingales over time. In this section, we obtain powerful convergence results about these martingales.

**Example.** If  $X_i$  are independent with mean 0, then  $S_n = \sum X_i$  is a martingale, and it is of interest to ask (ala the law of large numbers) if  $S_n$  converges as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  to some random variable  $S_{\infty}$ . Similarly, if  $X_i$  have mean one, we want to analyze whether  $M_n = X_1 \dots X_n$  settles down to some random variable  $M_{\infty}$ , which is a ‘product form’ of the law of large numbers.

**Example.** Given a random variable  $X$  and a filtration  $\Sigma_n$ , we want to ask whether the martingale

$$\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_0], \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_1], \dots$$

converges to  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_{\infty}]$ , which means that in some sense, we steadily learn all there is to know about  $X$  as  $n$  increases, rather than having a ‘breakthrough’ at  $\infty$ , where we can put all information together to learn  $X$ .

We start by proving that if a martingale doesn’t ‘spread out’ too much, then it must actually converge over time to a finite value, because the conditional expectations restrict the martingale to having smaller and smaller spreads over time. Doob’s upcrossing lemma provides the first result along this manner, and we consider its consequences to its natural conclusion. Given a process  $M$ , and  $a \leq b$ , consider a stopping time  $U[a, b] =$



$U(M, [a, b])$  which counts the number of ‘upcrossings’ from  $a$  to  $b$ . That is,  $U_n[a, b] = m$  if there are  $0 \leq t_1 < s_1 < \dots < t_n < s_n \leq n$  with  $M_{t_i} < a$ ,  $M_{s_i} > b$ . The number of upcrossings of a stochastic process represents the amount of ‘variation’ in your process between  $a$  and  $b$ . It turns out that the variation of martingales is essentially constant. We obtain the proof by showing that ‘buy low’, ‘sell high’ doesn’t help you when you’re gambling against an unfair system.

**Theorem 6.4** (Doob’s Upcrossing Lemma). *If  $M$  is a supermartingale, then*

$$(b - a)\mathbf{E}(U_n[a, b]) \leq \mathbf{E}[(X_n - a)^-]$$

*and if  $M$  is a submartingale, then*

$$(b - a)\mathbf{E}(U_n[a, b]) \leq \mathbf{E}[(X_n - a)^+]$$

*so expected spread impacts the expected number of upcrossings, rather than the time epoch  $n$  we wait up until.*

*Proof.* Consider a previsible process  $C$  which follows the following rule-set: We wait under  $M_n < a$ , and then we play unit stakes until  $M_n > b$ , in which case we stop playing and wait for  $M_n$  to become less than  $a$  again, in which case we start playing at unit stakes, rince and repeat. More rigorously, we define  $C_1 = \mathbf{I}(X_0 < a)$ , and then set

$$C_n = \mathbf{I}(C_{n-1} = 1)\mathbf{I}(M_{n-1} \leq b) + \mathbf{I}(C_{n-1} = 0)\mathbf{I}(M_{n-1} < a)$$

Now  $\|C_n\|_\infty \leq 1$  is bounded, and therefore  $C \bullet M$  is a supermartingale. But

$$(C \bullet M)_n \geq (b - a)U_n[a, b] - (M_n - a)^-$$

because we make at least  $b - a$  at each ‘run’ of unit betting, when  $M_n$  rises to  $a$ , but lose at most  $(M_n - a)^-$  because we start begging when  $M_k < a$ . We conclude that  $\mathbf{E}((C \bullet M)_0) \leq \mathbf{E}((C \bullet M)_0) = 0$ , and so

$$(b - a)\mathbf{E}[U_n[a, b]] \leq \mathbf{E}[(M_n - a)^-]$$

and this is the required inequality. If  $M$  is a submartingale, then we can consider the same betting strategy, but where we bet a negative stake rather than a positive stake, and we conclude that

$$(C \bullet M)_n \leq (M_n - a)^+ - (b - a)U_n[a, b]$$

and so

$$0 \leq \mathbf{E}((C \bullet M)_n) \leq \mathbf{E}((M_n - a)^+) - (b - a)\mathbf{E}[U_n[a, b]]$$

giving us the other inequality.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.5.** *Let  $M$  be a (sub/super) martingale bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . If  $a < b$ , and if we define  $U_\infty[a, b] = \lim U_n[a, b]$ , then  $\mathbf{P}(U_\infty = \infty) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Using the monotone convergence theorem, the upcrossing lemma provides a bound

$$(b - a)\mathbf{E}U_\infty[a, b] = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (b - a)U_n[a, b] \leq \sup \mathbf{E}[(X_n - a)^-] < |a| + \sup \|X_n\|_1$$

and so  $U_\infty[a, b] \in L^1(\Omega)$ , hence  $\mathbf{P}(U_\infty[a, b] = \infty) = 0$ . The proof for submartingales is essentially the same.  $\square$

If we consider the countable set of all the pairs  $p < q$ , then we can conclude that  $\mathbf{P}(\forall p < q \in \mathbf{Q}^+ : U_\infty[p, q] = \infty) = 0$ , and since every interval  $[a, b]$  contains an interval of the form  $[p, q]$ , we conclude that almost surely, for all  $a < b$ ,  $U_\infty[a, b] \neq \infty$ .

**Theorem 6.6** (Doob's Upward Convergence Theorem). *Let  $M$  be a (sub/super) martingale bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . Then almost surely,  $M_\infty = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} M_n$  exists in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and is finite. If we define  $M_\infty = \limsup M_n$ , then  $M_\infty$  will also be  $\Sigma_\infty = \bigcup \Sigma_n$  measurable.*

*Proof.* If  $M_n(\omega)$  does not converge, then  $\liminf M_n(\omega) < \limsup M_n(\omega)$ . But this means we can find  $a < b$  such that

$$\liminf M_n(\omega) < a < b < \limsup M_n(\omega)$$

and  $M_n$  must oscillate between  $a$  and  $b$  infinitely often, so  $U_\infty[a, b](\omega) = \infty$ . We have shown the set of all  $\omega$  for which there exists  $[a, b]$  with  $U_\infty[a, b](\omega) = \infty$  is a set of probability 0, which means that  $M_n$  converges almost surely. Fatou's lemma implies that

$$\mathbf{E}|M_\infty| = \mathbf{E}(\liminf |M_n|) \leq \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}|M_n| \leq \sup \mathbf{E}|M_n| < \infty$$

So  $M_\infty$  is finite almost surely.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.7.** *If  $M$  is a non-negative super martingale, then  $M_\infty = \lim M_n$  exists almost surely.*

*Proof.* If  $M$  is a supermartingale, then

$$\|M_n\|_1 = \mathbf{E}(M_n) = \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_0)) \leq \mathbf{E}(M_0) = \|M_0\|_1$$

so any such martingale is bounded.  $\square$

It would be wise before moving on to review the concept of the uniform integrability of random variables, since it is one of the keystones from moving the pointwise convergence of  $M_n$  to  $M_\infty$  in the previous theorems to convergence in the  $L^p$  norms. We recall the main point that a sequence of random variables  $X_n$  converges in  $L^1$  to  $X$  if and only if the variables converge in probability, and the variables are uniformly integrable. The next theorem is essentially obvious given the standard results on uniform integrability.

**Corollary 6.8.** *If  $M$  is a (sub/super) martingale bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , then  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$  if and only if  $M$  is uniformly integrable, and then  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty|\Sigma_n) \leq M_n$  almost surely. For martingales, we find  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty|\Sigma_n) = M_n$ . This means we can think of  $M$  as being a martingale with time indices  $\mathbf{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ .*

*Proof.* Since pointwise almost sure convergence implies convergence in probability, if  $M_n$  is uniformly integrable, then the result we mentioned above implies  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and the only part of this theorem left to prove is that  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty|\Sigma_n) \leq M_n$  if  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  in the  $L^1$  norm. We note that for  $E \in \Sigma_n$ ,

$$\int_E \mathbf{E}(M_m|\Sigma_n) d\mathbf{P} \leq \int_E M_n d\mathbf{P}$$

We then let  $m \rightarrow \infty$  to conclude

$$\int_E \mathbf{E}(M_\infty|\Sigma_n) d\mathbf{P} \leq \int_E M_n d\mathbf{P}$$

And this shows  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty|\Sigma_n) \leq M_n$  almost surely.  $\square$

This proof leads to a simple martingale proof of the 0-1 law, which is a foundational result in basic probability theory, using the example that for any integrable random variable  $X$ , and any filtration  $\Sigma_n$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma_n)$  is a martingale (which is uniformly integrable, a very nice feature of conditional expectation with respect to a single random variable). The proof of the Kolmogorov theorem is essentially the same as the standard proof, except that some of the statements can be buried into facts about the convergence of martingales.

**Corollary 6.9** (Kolmogorov's 0-1 Law). *Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be a sequence of independent random variables, and then let*

$$\Sigma_n = \sigma(X_{n+1}, \dots) \quad \Sigma_\infty = \lim \Sigma_n$$

*Then for any  $E \in \Sigma_\infty$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(E) = 0$  or  $1$ .*

*Proof.* If  $E \in \Sigma_\infty$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(\chi_E | \Sigma_n) = \chi_E$  is a martingale. For each  $n$ ,  $\chi_E$  is independent of all of the  $\sigma$  algebras  $\Sigma_n$ , because

$$\{F : F \in \sigma(X_n, X_{n+1}, \dots, X_N) \text{ for some } N\}$$

form a  $\pi$  system generating  $\Sigma_n$ , and  $\sigma(X_n, X_{n+1}, \dots, X_N)$  and  $\Sigma_{N+1}$  are independent, so  $F$  is independent to  $E$ . But the  $\chi_E$  are obviously uniformly integrable and converge in probability, so the upward theorem guarantees

$$\chi_E = \mathbf{E}(\chi_E | \Sigma_\infty) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}(\chi_E | \Sigma_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}(\chi_E) = \mathbf{P}(E)$$

almost surely, and therefore  $\mathbf{P}(E) = 0$  or  $\mathbf{P}(E) = 1$ . □

The next theorem shows that random variables in  $L^1$  are ‘smoothly learnable’.

**Lemma 6.10.** *If  $X \in L^1(\Omega)$  is a random variable, then, as  $\Sigma$  ranges over all subsigma algebras of the probability space,  $\{\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)\}$  is a uniformly integrable family.*

*Proof.* By the conditional form of Jensen's inequality, we conclude that  $|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| \leq \mathbf{E}(|X| | \Sigma)$  almost everywhere. Now for every  $K > 0$ ,  $|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| > K$  is  $\Sigma$  measurable, so

$$\int_{|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| > K} |\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| \leq \int_{|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| > K} \mathbf{E}(|X| | \Sigma) = \int_{|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| > K} |X|$$

Now since

$$\mathbf{E}[|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)|] \leq \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{E}(|X| | \Sigma)] = \mathbf{E}|X|$$

We can apply Markov's inequality to conclude

$$\mathbf{E}|X| \geq K \mathbf{P}(|\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma)| > K)$$

So if we choose  $K$  big enough that  $\mathbf{E}|X|/K < \delta$ , then  $\mathbf{P}(|\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)| > K) < \delta$  for all  $\sigma$  algebras  $\Sigma$ , and since we know that, because  $X$  is in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , for every  $\varepsilon$ , there is  $\delta$  such that if  $\mathbf{P}(E) < \delta$ , then  $\int_E |X| < \varepsilon$ , and this shows

$$\int_{|\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)| > K} |\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)| < \varepsilon$$

Uniform integrability has been verified.  $\square$

**Theorem 6.11.** *If  $X \in L^1$  and  $\Sigma$  is any filtration, then  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_n] \rightarrow \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_\infty]$ , where  $\Sigma_\infty = \sigma(\bigcup \Sigma_n)$ .*

*Proof.* We have already seen that  $M_n = \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_n]$  is a martingale. We have also proved that  $M_n$  is a uniformly integrable martingale, which implies  $M_n$  converges in  $L_1$  to  $M_\infty$ , which is  $\Sigma_\infty$  measurable, and since  $\bigcup \Sigma_n$  is a  $\pi$  system generating  $\Sigma_\infty$ , we verify that for each  $E \in \Sigma_n$ ,

$$\int_E M_\infty = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \int_E \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_m]$$

and  $\int_E \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_m] = \int_E X$  for  $m \geq n$ , so that we have verified  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_\infty]$  is a conditional expectation for  $X$ , and so  $M_\infty = \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_\infty]$ .  $\square$

The next result is crucial for the theory of continuous time martingales, because it enables us to descend from discrete results about martingales to ‘limits’ of discrete results. Rather than discussing the behaviour of martingales on  $\mathbf{N}$  as they tend to  $\infty$ , we discuss the behaviour of martingales on  $-\mathbf{N}$  as they go ‘back in time’ to  $-\infty$ .

**Theorem 6.12** (Lévy Doob Downward Theorem). *Consider a supermartingale  $M_0, M_{-1}, \dots$  with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma_0 \supset \Sigma_{-1} \supset \dots$ . If we assume  $\sup \mathbf{E}(M_n) < \infty$ , then the process  $M$  is uniformly integrable, the limit  $M_{-\infty} = \lim M_n$  exists almost surely, we have convergence in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and  $\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_{-\infty}) \leq M_{-\infty}$  for all  $n$ , where  $\Sigma_{-\infty} = \bigcap \Sigma_n$ . Similar results for submartingales hold if  $\inf \mathbf{E}(M_n) > -\infty$ , and if  $M$  is a martingale, provided  $\inf \mathbf{E}(M_n)$  and  $\sup \mathbf{E}(M_n)$  are both finite, we can conclude that  $\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_{-\infty}) = M_{-\infty}$ .*

*Proof.* We first prove the uniform integrality property. Let  $\varepsilon > 0$  be given. The supermartingale property implies that  $\mathbf{E}(M_n) \leq \mathbf{E}(M_m)$  if  $m \leq n$ , so the expectation increases as  $m$  decreases. Since  $\sup \mathbf{E}(M_n) < \infty$ , the values  $\mathbf{E}(M_n)$  decrease to some finite value as  $n$  decreases, and we may assume

that there is  $k$  such that  $\mathbf{E}(M_n) \leq \mathbf{E}(M_k) + \varepsilon$  for all  $n \leq k$ . But now this implies that for a fixed  $\lambda$ , using the supermartingale property, that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{|M_n| > \lambda} |M_n| &= \mathbf{E}(M_n) - \int_{M_n < -\lambda} M_n - \int_{M_n \leq \lambda} M_n \\ &\leq [\mathbf{E}(M_k) + \varepsilon] - \int_{M_n < -\lambda} M_k - \int_{M_n \leq \lambda} M_k \\ &= \int_{|M_n| > \lambda} |M_k| + \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

Since  $M_k \in L^1(\Omega)$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that if  $\mathbf{P}(E) < \delta$ , then  $\int_E |M_k| < \varepsilon$ . If we can prove that, uniformly in  $n$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(|M_n| > \lambda) < \delta$  for large enough  $\lambda$  and  $n$ , then the proof will be complete. Applying Markov's inequality gives

$$\mathbf{P}(|M_n| > \lambda) \leq \frac{\mathbf{E}|M_n|}{\lambda} = \frac{\mathbf{E}(M_n) + 2\mathbf{E}(M_n^-)}{\lambda} \leq \frac{\sup \mathbf{E}(M_n) + 2\mathbf{E}(M_0^-)}{\lambda}$$

where we have used the fact that  $M_n^-$  is a submartingale. Letting  $\lambda$  be large enough gives the required result. Because  $M_n$  is uniformly integrable, it is bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and essentially the same proof of convergence for supermartingales at  $\infty$  works here, because we have the upcrossing result that

$$(b - a)\mathbf{E}(U_\infty[a, b]) \leq \mathbf{E}[(M_0 - a)^-]$$

except that we no longer have any dependence on  $M_n$  for large negative values of  $n$ , so no boundedness condition is required.  $\square$

The strong law of large numbers appears as an immediate corollary.

**Corollary 6.13.** *Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be i.i.d, integrable random variables of mean  $\mu$ . If  $S_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$ , then  $n^{-1}S_n \rightarrow \mu$  almost surely and in  $L^1(\Omega)$ .*

*Proof.* Set  $\Sigma_n = \sigma(S_n, S_{n+1}, \dots) = \sigma(S_n, X_{n+1}, X_{n+2}, \dots)$ . For any  $m \leq n$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(X_m | \Sigma_n) = n^{-1}S_n$ . This means that for  $m \leq n$ ,

$$\mathbf{E}(m^{-1}S_m | \Sigma_n) = n^{-1}S_n$$

so if we invert time, and look at  $m^{-1}S_m$  as indexed on  $(-\infty, 0]$ , then  $m^{-1}S_m$  is a supermartingale relative to  $\Sigma_m$ . We calculate that  $\mathbf{E}(m^{-1}S_m) = \mu < \infty$ ,

so the last theorem implies that  $A = \lim n^{-1}S_n$  exists almost surely and in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . If we define  $S = \limsup n^{-1}S_n$ , then  $S \in \Sigma_\infty = \bigcap \Sigma_n \subset \bigcap \Delta_n$ , where  $\Delta_n = \sigma(X_n, \dots)$ . By Kolmogorov's 0-1 law, we know that  $\sum \mathbf{P}(S \in [n, n+1)) = 1$ , so there is an interval  $I_0$  of length 1 such that  $S \in I_0$  almost surely. If we break  $I_0$  up into two intervals, we conclude that there is an interval  $I_1$  of length  $2^{-1}$  such that  $S \in I_1$  almost surely. Performing this process repeatedly, we find a decreasing series of intervals  $I_k$  of length  $2^{-k}$  with  $S \in I_k$  almost surely. This means  $S \in \bigcap I_k$  almost surely, implying  $\bigcap I_k$  is non-empty, and since the diameters of  $I_k$  decrease to 0,  $\bigcap I_k$  can consist of only a single number  $m$ , so  $S = m$  almost surely. But this means  $m = \mathbf{E}(S) = \lim \mathbf{E}(S_m) = \mu$ , so  $S = \mu$  almost surely.  $\square$

## 6.5 Martingale Inequalities

Doob's upcrossing lemma allows us to prove that Martingales do not really have 'too much variation', and this gives convergence results at  $\infty$  and  $-\infty$ . His further submartingale and  $L^p$  inequalities enable us to prove that Martingales are also 'essentially bounded'.

**Theorem 6.14** (Doob's Submartingale Inequality). *Let  $M$  be a submartingale, and define  $M_n^* = \sup_{k \leq n}$ . Then if  $\lambda, n > 0$ , then*

$$\lambda \mathbf{P}(M_n^* \geq \lambda) \leq \int_{M_n^* \geq \lambda} M_n$$

*Proof.* Let  $E = \{M_n^* \geq \lambda\}$ . Then we can write  $E$  as a disjoint union of sets  $E_0, E_1, \dots, E_n$ , where  $E_i = \{M_0, \dots, M_{i-1} < \lambda, M_i \geq \lambda\}$ . Now  $E_k \in \Sigma_k$ , and therefore

$$\int_{E_k} M_n \geq \int_{E_k} M_k \geq \lambda \mathbf{P}(E_k)$$

and we may now sum over all  $k$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 6.15.** *If  $M$  is a non-negative submartingale, then we can conclude*

$$\lambda \mathbf{P}(M_n^* \geq \lambda) \leq \mathbf{E}(M_n)$$

Notice that the submartingale inequality is independent of the step number  $n$ , which indicates we can obtain a uniform result for  $M^* = M_\infty^*$

when the  $M_n$  are bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . It is easy to obtain probabilistic results from the theorem above, but we will show that  $M^*$  actually has  $L^p$  bounds as well.

**Lemma 6.16.** *If  $M$  is a martingale,  $c$  is convex, and  $c(M_n) \in L^1(\Omega)$  for each  $n$ , then  $c(M)$  is a submartingale.*

*Proof.* Applying Jensen's inequality, we conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}(c(M_n)|\Sigma_m) \geq c(\mathbf{E}(M_n|\Sigma_m)) = c(M_m)$$

We needed that  $c(M_n) \in L^1(\Omega)$  to apply this result.  $\square$

The most well know consequence of this result is Kolmogorov's inequality, which allows us to bound the deviation of the averages of zero-mean random variables.

**Corollary 6.17.** *If  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  is a sequence of independent, zero-mean finite variance random variables, with  $\sigma_k^2 = \mathbf{V}(X_k)$ . If  $S_n = X_1 + \dots + X_n$ , and  $V_n = \mathbf{V}(S_n) = \sigma_1^2 + \dots + \sigma_n^2$ , then for  $\lambda > 0$ , if we consider the values  $S_n^* = \max_{k \leq n} S_k$ , then*

$$\lambda^2 \mathbf{P}(S_n^* \geq \lambda) \leq V_n$$

*Proof.* Apply the submartingale inequality to  $S^2$ .  $\square$

Now we move on to the general class of theorems again, this time establishing results about  $M^*$  in the  $L^p$  spaces.

**Lemma 6.18.** *If  $X$  and  $Y$  are non-negative random variables such that for every  $\lambda > 0$ ,*

$$\lambda \mathbf{P}(X \geq \lambda) \leq \int_{X \geq \lambda} Y$$

*then for  $p > 1$  with conjugate  $q$ , we have  $\|X\|_p \leq q \|Y\|_p$ .*

*Proof.* Obviously, we can calculate that

$$L = \int_0^\infty p \lambda^{p-1} \mathbf{P}(X \geq \lambda) d\lambda \leq \int_0^\infty p \lambda^{p-2} \int_{X \geq \lambda} Y d\mathbf{P} d\lambda = R$$

By Tonelli's theorem, we find

$$L = \int_0^\infty p \lambda^{p-1} \mathbf{P}(X \geq \lambda) d\lambda = \int \int_0^X p \lambda^{p-1} d\lambda = \int X^p = \mathbf{E}(X^p)$$



$$R = \int_0^\infty p \lambda^{p-2} \int_{X \geq \lambda} Y d\mathbf{P} d\lambda = \int Y \int_0^X p \lambda^{p-2} d\lambda = \int \frac{p}{p-1} Y X^{p-1} d\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{E}(q Y X^{p-1})$$

But now we apply Holder's inequality to conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}(X^p) \leq \mathbf{E}(q Y X^{p-1}) \leq q \|Y\|_p \|X^{p-1}\|_q = q \|Y\|_p \mathbf{E}(X^p)^{1/q}$$

Hence  $\|X\|_p \leq q \|Y\|_p$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 6.19** (Doob's  $L_p$  inequality). *Let  $p > 1$ ,  $q$  its conjugate, and  $M$  a non-negative submartingale bounded in  $L^p(\Omega)$ . Then  $M^* \in L^p(\Omega)$ , and  $\|M^*\|_p \leq q \sup \|M_n\|_p$ . Also  $M_\infty$  is in  $L^p(\Omega)$  and  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  in  $L^p(\Omega)$ . If  $M = |N|$  for some martingale  $N$  bounded in  $L^p(\Omega)$ , then  $M_\infty = |N_\infty|$  almost surely.*

*Proof.* Define  $M_n^* = \sup_{k \leq n} M_k$ . Now we can apply convexity to conclude that  $(M_n^*)^p$  is a submartingale, and then Doob's submartingale inequality gives

$$\lambda \mathbf{P}(M_n^* \geq \lambda) \leq \int_{M_n^* \geq \lambda} M_n d\mathbf{P}$$

The lemma we just proved implies that  $\|M_n^*\|_p \leq q \|M_n\|_p$ . This implies the  $M_n^*$  are bounded in  $L^p(\Omega)$  also, and monotone convergence shows that  $M^* \in L^p(\Omega)$ , with the required inequality. Since  $M_n$  is also bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , we conclude that  $M_\infty$  exists. Since the variables  $M_n$  are bounded pointwise by  $M^*$ , we know that  $M_\infty$  is also bounded by  $M^*$  pointwise, and so

$$|M_n - M_\infty|^p \leq 2^p |M^*|^p$$

we may then apply dominated convergence to conclude that  $M_\infty \in L^p(\Omega)$ . If  $M_n = |N_n|$ , and  $N_n$  is a submartingale bounded in  $L^p(\Omega)$ , then  $M_n$  is surely bounded in  $L^p(\Omega)$ , so  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  almost surely pointwise. But we can use Lévy's upward theorem to conclude that  $N_n \rightarrow N_\infty$  almost surely, and we therefore conclude by taking absolute values pointwise that  $M_\infty = |N_\infty|$  almost surely.  $\square$

Doob's  $L_p$  inequality shows that  $L^p(\Omega)$  bounded martingales are really restricted in motion for  $p > 1$ . This contrasts a random walk on the integers, which dances back and forth infinitely without settling down to a finite value.

**Corollary 6.20** (Kakutani's Product Martingale Theorem). *Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be independent non-negative random variables of mean one, and consider the non-negative martingale  $M_n = X_1 \dots X_n$ . Then  $M$  is non-negative, so  $M_\infty$  exists pointwise almost surely, and the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty) = 1$ .
- (ii)  $M_n \rightarrow M_\infty$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$ .
- (iii)  $M$  is uniformly integrable.
- (iv)  $\prod \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2}) > 0$ .
- (v)  $\sum 1 - \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2}) < \infty$

*If any one of these statements fails, then  $M_\infty = 0$  almost surely.*

*Proof.* Suppose (iv) holds, and set

$$N_n = \frac{(X_1 \dots X_n)^{1/2}}{\mathbf{E}(X_1^{1/2}) \dots \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2})}$$

Then  $N_n$  is a martingale, and

$$\mathbf{E}(N_n^2) = \frac{1}{[\mathbf{E}(X_1^{1/2}) \dots \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2})]^2} \leq \left( \frac{1}{\prod \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2})} \right)^2 < \infty$$

so  $N$  is bounded in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , and therefore  $N_n$  converges in  $L^2$  to  $N_\infty$ . Doob's  $L^2$  inequality gives

$$\mathbf{E}(M^*) \leq \mathbf{E}((N^*)^2) \leq 2 \sup \mathbf{E}[N_n^2] < \infty$$

so  $M$  is dominated by an  $L^1$  function, and is therefore uniformly integrable, hence properties (i), (ii), and (iii) hold. On the other hand, if  $\prod \mathbf{E}(X_n^{1/2}) = 0$ , then  $N$  is still a non-negative martingale, so  $\lim N_n$  exists, but in order for this to be true we must have  $M_n^{1/2} \rightarrow 0$  almost surely, hence  $M_\infty = 0$  almost surely. This means that (i), (ii), and (iii) cannot hold. The equivalence of (iv) and (v) follows from the simple bounds  $1 - x \leq e^{-x}$  and  $\log(1 - x) \leq 1 - x$ .  $\square$

**Example.** *This theorem has important consequences in the theory of statistical likelihood. Given two probability measures  $P$  and  $Q$  on the same sample space, if  $Q$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $P$ , then we can use the Radon Nikodym theorem to find a non-negative random variable  $dQ/dP$ , which we call the likelihood ratio of  $Q$  given  $P$ .  $P$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $Q$  if  $dQ/dP > 0$  almost surely, and in this case we say  $P$  and  $Q$  are equivalent, and we actually find  $dP/dQ = 1/(dQ/dP)$ . We can then make sense of*

$$\int \sqrt{dP dQ} := \int \sqrt{dP/dQ} dQ = \int \sqrt{dQ/dP} dP$$

The **Hellinger distance**  $H(P, Q)$  between two equivalent distributions  $P$  and  $Q$  is defined such that

$$H^2(P, Q) = 1 - \int \sqrt{dP dQ} = \frac{1}{2} \int (\sqrt{dP} - \sqrt{dQ})^2$$

which quantifies the similarity between the two distributions. We will use this concept to draw a link between Kakutani's theorem and the theory of the likelihood ratio in statistics.

Given a family of probability density functions  $f_1, f_2, \dots$  and  $g_1, g_2, \dots$ , we can consider the unique probability distributions  $P$  and  $Q$  on  $\mathbf{R}^N$  such that the random variables  $X_i(x) = x(i)$  are continuous independent random variables with densities  $f_i$  (for  $P$ ) and  $g_i$  (for  $Q$ ). This is the canonical model to consider a sequence of independent random variables with two possible distributions.

If  $Q$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $P$ , we can consider the Radon Nikodym derivative  $dQ/dP$ , and if

$$E = E_1 \times \dots \times E_n \times \mathbf{R}^{N - \{1, \dots, n\}}$$

$$r_i = g_i/f_i \quad Y_i = r_i(X_i)$$

then

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_E (dQ/dP) dP &= \int_E dQ \\
&= \int_{E_1 \times \dots \times E_n} dX_*(Q) \\
&= \int_{E_1 \times \dots \times E_n} g_1(x_1) \dots g_n(x_n) dx_1 \dots dx_n \\
&= \int_{E_1 \times \dots \times E_n} r_1(x_1) \dots r_n(x_n) f(x_1) \dots f(x_n) dx_1 \dots dx_n \\
&= \int_{E_1 \times \dots \times E_n} r_1(x_1) \dots r_n(x_n) dX_*(P) \\
&= \int_E r_1(X_1) \dots r_n(X_n) dP = \int_E Y_1 \dots Y_n
\end{aligned}$$

It follows that if  $\Sigma_n = \sigma(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ , then  $\mathbf{E}[dQ/dP | \Sigma_n] = Y_1 \dots Y_n$ . Each  $Y_i$  is independent with mean 1 with respect to  $P$ , so in particular, this means that  $\mathbf{E}[dQ/dP | \Sigma_n]$  is a uniformly integrable product martingale with respect to  $P$ . Conversely, if the martingale  $M_n = Y_1 \dots Y_n$  is uniformly integrable with respect to  $P$ , then  $M_\infty$  exists almost surely, and  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty | \Sigma_n) = M_n$  for all  $n$ , in which case the measures

$$E \mapsto Q(E) \quad E \mapsto \int_E M_\infty dP$$

are equal on the  $\pi$  system of finite cylinders, and hence they agree everywhere, so  $M_\infty$  is a version of the Radon Nikodym derivative  $dQ/dP$ . In particular, this means  $Q$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $P$ . Kakutani's theorem therefore implies that  $Q$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $P$  if and only if

$$\prod \mathbf{E}(Y_n^{1/2}) = \prod \int \sqrt{f_n(x)g_n(x)} dx > 0$$

which is equivalent to saying

$$\sum \int \left( \sqrt{f_n(x)} - \sqrt{g_n(x)} \right)^2 dx = 2 \sum H^2(f_n, g_n) < \infty$$

Because this condition is clearly symmetric in  $P$  and  $Q$ , we can repeat the argument above to conclude that  $Q$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $P$  if and only if  $P$  is absolutely continuous with respect to  $Q$ .

Suppose that we now take  $X_n$  to be identically distributed random variables with respect to  $P$  and  $Q$ , so  $f_n = f$  and  $g_n = g$  for all  $n$ . The Kakutani condition established above guarantees that  $Q$  is equivalent to  $P$  if and only if  $f = g$  almost everywhere, and then we conclude that  $P = Q$ . Moreover, Kakutani's theorem implies that if  $Q \neq P$ , then  $M_n \rightarrow 0$  almost surely with respect to  $P$ . This is the consistancy result for the likelihood ratio test in statistics. To recall, suppose we have a sequence of i.i.d variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  with an unknown common distribution, and we have a hypothesis that the common distribution either corresponds to the density function  $f$  or the density function  $g$ . We can then calculate the statistic

$$M_n = \frac{g(X_1) \dots g(X_n)}{f(X_1) \dots f(X_n)} = Y_1 \dots Y_n$$

The results above show that if  $P \neq Q$ , then  $M_n \rightarrow 0$  almost surely with respect to  $P$ , and  $M_n \rightarrow \infty$  almost surely with respect to  $Q$ . It therefore follows that if we decide that  $P$  is the correct distribution if  $M_n < \alpha$ , and we decide that  $Q$  is the correct distribution if  $M_n > \alpha$ , for any particular  $\alpha > 0$ , which is known as the likelihood ratio test, then we will have proved the test's consistancy, because it is guaranteed correct for large enough  $n$ .

Doob's  $L^p$  theorem also leads to a novel proof of the Radon Nikodym theorem using Martingales, which indicates that Martingales can be used in mathematical analysis rather than just statistics. The idea is that the martingale proof allows us to take the right limits of the discrete variant of the Radon Nikodym theorem, which is obvious.

**Theorem 6.21.** Suppose that  $(\Omega, P)$  is a probability space with a separable  $\sigma$  algebra. If  $Q$  is a finite measure which is absolutely continuous with respect to another measure  $P$ , then there is  $X \in L^1(\Omega, P)$  with

$$\int_E dQ = \int_E X dP$$

for all measurable sets  $E$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that the  $\sigma$  algebra of  $\Omega$  is generated by the sets  $E_1, E_2, \dots$ . Consider the finite algebra  $\Sigma_n = \sigma(E_1, \dots, E_n)$ , which form a filtration. Because  $\Sigma_n$  is finite, it is easy to construct a function  $X_n$  such that if  $F \in \Sigma_n$ , then

$$\int_F dQ = \int_F X dP$$

by just making the function constant over each atom, normalized so that the measures balance out when integrated. Because of how the finite algebras are split up when  $\Sigma_n$  increases to  $\Sigma_{n+1}$ , we conclude that  $X_n$  is a martingale with respect to  $\Sigma_n$ . Because the  $X_n$  are non-negative, we can apply the convergence theorem to conclude that  $X_\infty = \lim X_n$  exists almost everywhere with respect to  $P$ . If we could verify that the  $X_n$  were uniformly integrable, then we would obtain that  $X_\infty$  is the  $L^1$  limit of the  $X_n$ , so that the measures

$$E \mapsto \int_E X_\infty dP \quad E \mapsto Q(E)$$

agree on the  $\pi$  system which is the union of the  $\Sigma_n$ , and hence everywhere, so we have found a Radon Nikodym derivative. By absolute continuity, it is easy to argue that for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there is  $\delta > 0$  such that if  $P(E) < \delta$ ,  $Q(E) < \varepsilon$ , and let  $K > 0$  be such that  $Q(\Omega) < \delta K$ . Then

$$\mathbf{P}(X_n > K) \leq \frac{\mathbf{E}(X_n)}{K} = \frac{Q(\Omega)}{K} < \delta$$

and this gives uniform integrability.  $\square$

The extension to non-separable measure spaces from this theorem is tricky, but doable, but it doesn't really tell us anything enlightening. The argument generalizes to  $\sigma$  finite measures on general measure spaces. Statistically, it means the argument says that we can 'learn' the Radon Nikodym derivative in a separable space by successively observing  $E_1, E_2, \dots$ , and adapting the conditional expectation of the derivative accordingly (the values  $X_n$  in our proof).

## 6.6 Martingales in $L^2(\Omega)$

As in most of analysis, the nicest estimates we can get for martingales occur in the  $L^2$  theory. We know that the conditional expectation operator is an orthogonal projection onto the subspace of measurable functions. If  $M$  is an  $L^2$  martingale, then

$$\mathbf{E}(M_n - M_m | \Sigma_m) = 0$$

so  $M_n - M_m$  is perpendicular to the space of  $\Sigma_m$  measurable functions for all  $n \geq m$ . This means that

$$M_n = M_0 + \sum_{k=1}^n (M_k - M_{k-1})$$

expressed  $M_n$  as the sum of orthogonal random variables, and so

$$\mathbf{E}(M_n^2) = \mathbf{E}(M_0^2) + \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{E}((M_k - M_{k-1})^2)$$

so the expected quadratic variation  $[M]_n = \sum (M_n - M_{n-1})^2$  directly measures the average square sum of the  $M_n$  up to  $\mathbf{E}[M_0]$ .

**Theorem 6.22.** *A martingale  $M$  is bounded in  $L^2(\Omega)$  if and only if*

$$\mathbf{E}(M_0^2) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{E}((M_k - M_{k-1})^2) < \infty$$

*and then  $M_n \rightarrow M_{\infty}$  in  $L^2(\Omega)$ .*

**Example.** We know that the harmonic series  $\sum 1/n$  diverges, whereas the alternating harmonic series  $\sum (-1)^n/n$  converges. If we let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  denote independent fair  $\{-1, 1\}$  Bernoulli random variables, what is the probability that  $\sum X_i/n$  converges? The finite sums  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  certainly form a martingale, and we find that

$$\mathbf{E}[S_i^2] = \sum \frac{\mathbf{V}(X_i)}{n^2} = \frac{1}{4} \sum \frac{1}{n^2} < \infty$$

so  $S_n \rightarrow S_{\infty}$  almost surely, and  $S_{\infty} \in L^2(\Omega)$  so the sum is finite almost surely as well. More generally, if we consider  $a_i > 0$ , then the corresponding sequence  $\sum a_i X_i$  converges almost surely if  $\sum a_i^2 < \infty$ . On the other hand, if  $\sum a_i^2 = \infty$ , then the finite sums of  $\sum a_i X_i$  oscillate infinitely, because the quadratic variation  $[S_n] \rightarrow \infty$ .

The next result says that an adapted process can always be reduced to a process adapted ‘one step behind’ if we subtract a martingale.

**Theorem 6.23 (Doob Decomposition).** *If  $X_n$  is an adapted process consisting of integrable random variables, then  $X$  has a decomposition*

$$X_n = X_0 + M_n + A_n$$

where  $M_n$  is a martingale null at zero, and  $A$  is a previsible process null at zero. This decomposition is unique modulo indistinguishability. The process  $X_n$  is a submartingale if and only if  $A$  is an almost surely increasing process, and a supermartingale if  $A$  is an almost surely decreasing process.

*Proof.* Assume without loss of generality that  $X_0 = 0$ . Note that if we had such a decomposition, then

$$\mathbf{E}(X_1|\Sigma_0) = \mathbf{E}(M_1|\Sigma_0) + \mathbf{E}(A_1|\Sigma_0) = M_0 + A_1 = A_1$$

so we are forced to set  $A_1 = \mathbf{E}(X_1|\Sigma_0)$ , and then  $M_1 = X_1 - A_1$ . More generally, we find

$$\mathbf{E}(X_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) = \mathbf{E}(M_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) + \mathbf{E}(A_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) = M_n + A_{n+1}$$

This allows us to recursively define  $M_n$  and  $A_{n+1}$  uniquely. All that remains is to verify  $M$  and  $A$  have the required properties. It is clear that if  $M_n$  is  $\Sigma_n$  measurable, then  $A_{n+1}$  is  $\Sigma_n$  measurable, so  $A_{n+1}$  is previsible, and this follows because  $M_n = X_n - A_n$  is the sum of  $\Sigma_n$  measurable variables. Next, we check the martingale property, verifying that

$$\mathbf{E}(M_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) = \mathbf{E}(X_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) - \mathbf{E}(A_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) = \mathbf{E}(X_{n+1}|\Sigma_n) - A_{n+1} = M_n$$

and this completes the proof.  $\square$

Given a martingale  $M$  in  $L^2(\Omega)$  null at zero, then  $M^2$  is a submartingale, and we can consider the Doob decomposition  $M^2 = N + \langle M \rangle$ , where  $N$  is a martingale, and  $\langle M \rangle$  is an increasing previsible process.

**Theorem 6.24.**  $\langle M \rangle$  has the following properties:

- $M$  is bounded in  $L^2(\Omega)$  if and only if  $\mathbf{E}\langle M \rangle_\infty < \infty$ .
- $\lim M_n(\omega)$  exists for almost all  $\omega$  with  $\langle M \rangle_\infty(\omega) < \infty$ .
- If  $M$  has uniformly bounded increments, then  $\langle M \rangle_\infty(\omega) < \infty$  for almost all  $\omega$  for which  $\lim M_n(\omega)$  exists.

In the third case, this essentially means that  $\langle M \rangle_\infty(\omega) < \infty$  if and only if  $\lim M_n(\omega)$  exists.



*Proof.* Since  $\mathbf{E}[M_n^2] = \mathbf{E}\langle M \rangle_n$ , the first property is obvious. To obtain the other two properties, we consider stopping times. For each  $k \in \mathbf{N}$ , let  $S_k$  be the first time that  $\langle M \rangle_{S_k} > k$ . It is easy to see that  $\langle M \rangle^{S_k}$  is previsible, because  $\langle M \rangle$  is. Since

$$(M^{S_k})^2 - \langle M \rangle^{S_k} = (M^2 - \langle M \rangle)^{S_k}$$

is a martingale,  $\langle M^{S_k} \rangle = \langle M \rangle^{S_k}$ , and since the process  $\langle M \rangle^{S_k}$  is bounded by  $k$ , we conclude  $M^{S_k}$  is bounded in the  $L^2$  norm, and hence  $\lim M_{n \wedge S_k}$  exists almost everywhere pointwise and in  $L^2$ , and in particular, we conclude  $\lim M_n$  exists on almost every point of the set  $\{S_k = \infty\}$ . But

$$\{\langle M \rangle_\infty < \infty\} = \bigcup \{S_k = \infty\}$$

and we obtain the second result. To obtain the third, suppose that

$$\mathbf{P}(\langle M \rangle_\infty = \infty, M^* < \infty) > 0$$

Then for some  $\lambda > 0$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(T_\lambda = \infty, \langle M \rangle_\infty = \infty) > 0$  where  $T_\lambda$  is the stopping time, which is the first time where  $|M_{T_\lambda}| > \lambda$ . Now by the martingale property,

$$\mathbf{E}(M_{T_\lambda \wedge n}^2 - \langle M \rangle_{T_\lambda \wedge n}) = 0$$

and  $M^{T_\lambda}$  is bounded by  $K + \lambda$ , if the increments of  $M$  are bounded by  $K$ , so

$$\mathbf{E}\langle M \rangle_{T_\lambda \wedge n} \leq (K + \lambda)^2$$

But if  $\langle M \rangle_m(\omega) \rightarrow \infty$  as  $m \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude that  $\langle M \rangle_{T_\lambda \wedge n} \rightarrow \infty$  if  $T_\lambda(\omega) = \infty$ , and this occurs on a set of positive measure by assumption, hence  $\mathbf{P}(T_\lambda = \infty) = 0$ . If  $\lim M_n(\omega)$  exists, then  $M^*(\omega) < \infty$ , so  $\langle M \rangle_\infty < \infty$  almost surely.  $\square$

Recall the definition of the quadratic variation  $[M]_n = \sum_{k=1}^n (M_k - M_{k-1})^2$ , which we have seen measures how well bounded the square norm of the sequence of random variables in  $M$  is in much the same way that  $\langle M \rangle_n$  does.

**Theorem 6.25.** *If  $M$  is a martingale in  $L^2$  null at zero, then*

$$M^2 - [M] = C \bullet M$$

where  $C_n = 2M_{n-1}$ . We conclude  $M^2 - [M]$  is a martingale (but  $[M] \neq \langle M \rangle$  is not necessarily true, because  $[M]$  is not a previsible process). If  $M$  is bounded in  $L^2$ , then  $M^2 - [M]$  is uniformly integrable.

*Proof.* We calculate that

$$M_n^2 - [M]_n = M_n^2 - \sum_{k=1}^n (M_k - M_{k-1})^2 = 2 \sum_{k=1}^n M_k M_{k-1}$$

We apply Doob's  $L^2$  inequality to conclude that  $M^* \in L^2$ , and since

$$M^2 - [M] \leq (M^*)^2 + [M]_\infty \in L^1(\Omega)$$

Hence  $M^2 - [M]$  is dominated by a random variable in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and is therefore uniformly integrable.  $\square$

It is important to note that by construction,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle M \rangle_n &= \mathbf{E}[M_n^2 - N_n | \Sigma_{n-1}] \\ &= \mathbf{E}[M_n^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}] - N_{n-1} \\ &= \mathbf{E}[M_n^2 - M_{n-1}^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}] + M_{n-1}^2 - N_{n-1} \\ &= \mathbf{E}[M_n^2 - M_{n-1}^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}] + \langle M \rangle_{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\langle M \rangle_n - \langle M \rangle_{n-1} = \mathbf{E}[M_n^2 - M_{n-1}^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}]$$

measures the conditional expected variation of the  $M_n$ . This gives the formula

$$\mathbf{E}[M_n^2 - M_{n-1}^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}] = \mathbf{E}[(M_n - M_{n-1})^2 | \Sigma_{n-1}] = \mathbf{E}[[M]_n - [M]_{n-1} | \Sigma_{n-1}]$$

giving a relationship between the two 'bracket processes'.

## 6.7 Optional Sampling Theorem

The optional sampling theorem generalizes the optional stopping theorem to cases where we do not 'immediately stop', but we instead take two stopping times  $S$  and  $T$ , take all information known about  $S$  when it stops, and see if the average value of  $X_T$  is different from  $\mathbf{E}[X_S]$ . If  $S = n$  is deterministic, this is essentially the optional stopping theorem.

To formally see what the optional sampling theorem says, we have to define what the ‘information known when  $S$  is stopped’ is. It must of course be a  $\sigma$  algebra, and we define it to be the set

$$\Sigma_T = \bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} \{E : \{T \leq n\} \cap E \in \Sigma_n\}$$

which is equivalent to saying a set  $E$  is in  $\Sigma_T$  if  $E \cap \{T = n\} \in \Sigma_n$  for all  $n$ . Thus knowing  $\Sigma_T$  is equivalent to knowing the occurrence of all events which are known at time  $n$  if  $T$  is stopped at time  $n$ .

**Lemma 6.26.** *Let  $S$  and  $T$  be stopping times.*

- (i) *If  $X$  is a  $\Sigma$  adapted process, then  $X_T$  is  $\Sigma_T$  measurable.*
- (ii) *If  $S \leq T$  then  $\Sigma_S \subset \Sigma_T$ . Obviously, we can determine more information at a later time than an earlier time.*
- (iii)  *$\Sigma_{S \wedge T} = \Sigma_S \cap \Sigma_T$ . Information determined at time  $S$  and  $T$  is also determined at  $S \wedge T$ .*
- (iv) *If  $E \in \Sigma_{S \vee T}$ , then  $E \cap \{S \leq T\} \in \Sigma_T$ .*
- (v)  *$\Sigma_{S \vee T} = \sigma(\Sigma_S, \Sigma_T)$ . Thus information known at time  $S \vee T$  is exactly the information known at time  $S$  combined with the information known at time  $T$ .*

*Proof.* For (i),

$$\{X_T \leq t, T = n\} = \{X_n \leq t, T = n\} \in \Sigma_n$$

To obtain (ii), we note that if  $E \cap \{S \leq n\} \in \Sigma_n$  for all  $n$ , then

$$E \cap \{T \leq n\} = (E \cap \{S \leq n\}) \cap \{T \leq n\} \in \Sigma_n \cap \Sigma_n$$

(ii) implies  $\Sigma_{S \wedge T} \subset \Sigma_S \cap \Sigma_T$ , and if  $E \cap \{S \leq n\}, E \cap \{T \leq n\} \in \Sigma_n$  for all  $n$ , then

$$E \cap \{S \wedge T \leq n\} = (E \cap \{S \leq n\}) \cap (E \cap \{T \leq n\}) \in \Sigma_n$$

so  $E \in \Sigma_{S \wedge T}$ . For (iv),

$$\begin{aligned} E \cap \{S \leq T\} \cap \{T \leq n\} &= E \cap \{S \vee T \leq n\} \cap \{S \leq T \leq n\} \\ &= E \cap \{S \vee T \leq n\} \cap \bigcup_{k=0}^n (\{S \leq k\} \cap \{T = k\}) \in \Sigma_n \end{aligned}$$

It is obvious that  $\sigma(\Sigma_S, \Sigma_T) \subset \Sigma_{S \vee T}$ , and (iv) gives that if  $E \in \Sigma_{S \vee T}$ , then

$$E = (E \cap \{S \leq T\}) \cup (E \cap \{S \geq T\}) \in \Sigma_T \cup \Sigma_S \subset \sigma(\Sigma_S, \Sigma_T)$$

and this gives the final result.  $\square$

**Theorem 6.27** (Optional Sampling Theorem). *Let  $0 \leq S \leq T \leq \infty$  be stopping times.*

- *Let  $M$  be a uniformly integrable martingale, then  $\mathbf{E}[M_T | \Sigma_S] = M_S$ , so  $M$  is of ‘class (D)’ in that the family  $\{X_T : T \text{ is a stopping time}\}$  is uniformly integrable.*
- *If  $X$  is a uniformly integrable supermartingale, and consider the Doob decomposition  $X = X_0 + M - A$ . Then  $\mathbf{E}(A_\infty) < \infty$ ,  $M$  is uniformly integrable,  $X$  is also of class (D), and*

$$\mathbf{E}[X_T | \Sigma_S] \leq X_S$$

*for all  $0 \leq S \leq T \leq \infty$ . Essentially the same is true for submartingales.*

*Proof.* For the first part, suppose that  $0 \leq S \leq T \leq k$  for some finite  $k$ . Then  $M_T$  and  $M_S$  are in  $L^1$ , because they are dominated by  $|M_1| + \dots + |M_k|$ . Let  $E \in \Sigma_S$ , and define the stochastic process

$$C_n(\omega) = \mathbf{I}(\omega \in E, S(\omega) < n \leq T(\omega))$$

Then  $C$  is a previsible process, because it is the indicator function

$$E \cap \{S < n\} \cap \{n \leq T\} = E \cap \{S \leq n-1\} \cap \{T \leq n-1\}^c \in \Sigma_{n-1}$$

It follows that

$$0 = \mathbf{E}[(C \bullet M)_k] = \int_E M_T - M_S$$

so the integral of  $M_T$  and  $M_S$  agree on all  $\Sigma_S$  measurable subsets, and this gives  $\mathbf{E}[M_T | \Sigma_S] = M_S$ . In general, given  $S \leq T$ , we have proved the theorem for  $S \wedge k$  and  $T \wedge k$  for each  $k$ , so applying the theorem for  $T \wedge k \leq k$ , we find that, since we also have  $L^1$  convergence  $M_k \rightarrow M_\infty$ , and also  $\Sigma_k \supset \Sigma_{T \wedge k}$ , that

$$M_{T \wedge k} = \mathbf{E}[M_k | \Sigma_{T \wedge k}] = \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{E}[M_\infty | \Sigma_k] | \Sigma_{T \wedge k}] = \mathbf{E}[M_\infty | \Sigma_{T \wedge k}]$$

Since  $M$  is uniformly integrable, we obtain  $L^1$  convergence of  $M_{T \wedge k}$  to  $M_T$ , and Lévy's upward theorem gives

$$M_T = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} M_{T \wedge k} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}[M_\infty | \Sigma_{T \wedge k}] = \mathbf{E} \left[ M_\infty \middle| \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Sigma_{T \wedge k} \right]$$

Note, however, that  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Sigma_{T \wedge k}$  (the finishing point of many fallacious proofs). Of course, we have  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Sigma_{T \wedge k} \subset \Sigma_T$ . Suppose that  $E \in \Sigma_T$ . Then we have  $E \cap \{T \leq k\} \in \Sigma_{T \wedge k}$ , hence

$$E \cap \{T < \infty\} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} E \cap \{T \leq k\} \in \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Sigma_{T \wedge k}$$

Thus

$$\int_{E \cap \{T < \infty\}} M_T = \int_{E \cap \{T < \infty\}} M_\infty$$

But of course, we know tautologically that

$$\int_{E \cap \{T = \infty\}} M_T = \int_{E \cap \{T = \infty\}} M_\infty$$

and this gives  $\int_E M_T = \int_E M_\infty$  for all  $E \in \Sigma_T$ , hence  $\mathbf{E}[M_\infty | \Sigma_T] = M_T$ . But, swapping out  $S$  for  $T$ , if  $M$  is uniformly integrable,  $M^T$  is also uniformly integrable, and we have proven  $\mathbf{E}[M_T | \Sigma_S] = \mathbf{E}[M_\infty^T | \Sigma_S] = M_S$ . That  $M$  is of class (D) is now obvious, because

$$\{M_T : T \text{ is a stopping time}\} = \{\mathbf{E}[M_\infty | \Sigma_T] : T \text{ is a stopping time}\}$$

If  $X = X_0 + M - A$  is a uniformly integrable supermartingale, then

$$\mathbf{E}(A_n) = \mathbf{E}(X_0) - \mathbf{E}(X_n)$$

is bounded in  $L^1$ , and therefore

$$\mathbf{E}(A_\infty) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}(A_n) < \infty$$

Since  $X$  is uniformly integrable, it follow fairly easily that, since the expectation of the  $A_n$  are bounded, that  $M$  is uniformly integrable. But then this means that we can apply the first case of the optional stopping theorem to conclude that

$$\{M_T : T \text{ is a stopping time}\}$$

is uniformly integrable. But  $\{A_T : T \text{ is a stopping time}\}$  is also uniformly integrable, because the family is uniformly bounded. But this implies

$$\{X_T = X_0 + M_T - A_T\}$$

is also a uniformly integrable family. It now follows fairly simply that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}[X_T | \Sigma_S] &= X_0 + \mathbf{E}[M_T | \Sigma_S] - \mathbf{E}[A_T | \Sigma_S] \\ &\leq X_0 + M_S - A_S \end{aligned}$$

because  $A_T \geq A_S$ . □

If  $X$  is a uniformly integrable supermartingale, then  $X$  has a unique **Riesz decomposition**  $X = Y + Z$ , where  $Y$  is a martingale and  $Z$  is a *potential*, in the sense that  $Z$  is a non-negative uniformly integrable supermartingale with  $Z_\infty = 0$  almost surely.  $Z$  is then of class (D), and of course, we can set  $Z_n = \mathbf{E}(A_\infty - A_n | \Sigma_n)$ . The proof is a fairly easy exercise.

**Theorem 6.28.** *If  $X$  is a non-negative supermartingale, and  $S \leq T$  are stopping times, then  $\mathbf{E}(X_T | \Sigma_S) \leq X_S$ . For non-negative martingales, there is NO almost sure equality.*

*Proof.* We calculate that  $\mathbf{E}(X_{T \wedge n} | \Sigma_{S \wedge n}) \leq X_{S \wedge n}$ , as in the standard proof of the optional stopping theorem. Essentially the same proof again gives  $\mathbf{E}(X_{T \wedge n} | \Sigma_S) \leq X_{S \wedge n}$ , and then we can take Fatou's lemma. □

These results relate to a ‘commutivity property’ of the expectation operator.

**Theorem 6.29.** *If  $T$  is a stopping time, define the operator  $\mathbf{E}_T$  from  $L^1(\Omega, \Sigma)$  to  $L^1(\Omega, \Sigma_T)$  by defining  $\mathbf{E}_T(X) = \mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma_T)$ . Then for any  $S$  and  $T$ ,*

$$\mathbf{E}_S \mathbf{E}_T = \mathbf{E}_T \mathbf{E}_S = \mathbf{E}_{S \wedge T}$$

*Proof.* We repeatedly apply the optional sampling theorem for uniformly integrable martingales. Given  $X \in L^1(\Omega)$ , consider  $X_n = \mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma_n)$ . The optional sampling theorem gives  $\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma_T) = X_T$ . Similarly,  $X_{T \wedge n}$  is a family of uniformly integrable martingales tending to  $X_T$ , as is the family  $\mathbf{E}(X_T | \Sigma_n)$ , and so we know  $\mathbf{E}(X_T | \Sigma_n) = X_{T \wedge n}$  by the optional sampling theorem. Finally, applying the optional sampling theorem to  $X_{T \wedge n}$ , now proven uniformly integrable, we conclude  $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}(X | \Sigma_T) | \Sigma_S) = X_{T \wedge S}$ . □

**Part II**

**Continuous Time Stochastic  
Processes**

## Chapter 7

# Continuous Time Regularity

In physical phenomena and statistical experiments, one can only really obtain the finite dimensional distributions of a stochastic processes, which we call it's **law**. The Daniell Kolmogorov theorem provides a very satisfying conclusion to questions on whether all laws can be modelled by stochastic processes. In the case of discrete time, this is sufficient to describe almost all the useful information about a stochastic process. However, in continuous time, the uncountability of the time set causes certain paradoxes to occur. Given that we only really care about the finite dimensional distributions of a stochastic process, it makes technical sense to choose a stochastic process with the required law, but which is as mathematically pleasant as possible. This chapter is devoted to showing that for a large class of laws, we can construct stochastic processes with certain continuity properties. The next two examples indicate two examples where we require this regularity.

**Example.** Let  $T$  be a parameter set,  $m : T \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$  a function, and  $V : T \times T \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$  a symmetric non-negative-definite function, such that for any function  $f : S \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ , where  $S$  is a finite subset of  $T$ ,

$$\sum_{r,s \in S} f(r)V(r,s)f(s) \geq 0$$

The elementary theory of Gaussian distributions implies that for any finite sub-



set  $S$ , there exists a unique measure  $\mu_S$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbf{R}^S} \exp \left( i \sum_{s \in S} \theta(s) f(s) \right) d\mu_S(f) \\ = \exp \left( i \sum_{s \in S} \theta(r) m(r) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{r, s \in S} \theta(r) V(r, s) \theta(s) \right) \end{aligned}$$

We also know that the measures  $\mu_S$  are compatible, and so the Daniell Kolmogorov theorem enables us to construct the Gaussian process  $X$  on the index set  $T$  with mean  $\mu$  and covariance function  $V$ . If  $T = [0, \infty)$ ,  $\mu(t) = 0$  for all  $t$ , and  $V(t, s) = t \wedge s$ , then the Gaussian process constructed is almost a Brownian motion, in the sense that all the finite dimensional distributions of  $X$  satisfy the properties of Brownian motion, except that  $X$  may not have continuous sample paths. Since  $C[0, \infty)$  is not a measurable subset of  $\mathbf{R}^{[0, \infty)}$ , we cannot even calculate  $\mathbf{P}(X \in C[0, \infty))$  to conclude that the system is ‘almost surely’ continuous. Completion also won’t help us here, because if  $E \subset C[0, \infty)$  is measurable in  $\mathbf{R}^{[0, \infty)}$ , then  $E$  is only specified at finitely many points, so the only way it can avoid discontinuous functions is if  $E = \emptyset$ . Similarly, if  $C[0, \infty) \subset E$ , then  $E$  is only specified at countably many points, so  $E = \mathbf{R}^{[0, \infty)}$ , so  $\mathbf{P}_*(C[0, \infty)) = 0$ , and  $\mathbf{P}^*(C[0, \infty)) = 1$ . Thus we need a further theory to allow us to ‘modify’  $X$  in such a way that all its sample paths are continuous.

**Example.** Suppose  $\Omega$  is a  $\sigma$  finite measure space with measure  $\lambda$  over a  $\sigma$  algebra  $\Sigma$ , such that every singleton is measurable. We would like to construct **Poisson set functions**, which are ‘ $\Sigma$  indexed’ processes

$$\Lambda : \Sigma \rightarrow (\mathbf{N} \cup \{\infty\})^\Omega = \mathbf{N}_\infty^\Omega$$

such that

- If  $E \in \Sigma$ , then  $\Lambda(E)$  is a  $\mathbf{N}_\infty$  valued random variable which has a Poisson distribution with parameter  $\lambda(E)$ .
- If  $E_1, \dots, E_n \in \Sigma$  are disjoint, then  $\Lambda(E_1), \dots, \Lambda(E_n)$  are independent random variables.
- If  $E$  and  $F$  in  $\Sigma$  are disjoint, then  $\Lambda(E \cup F) = \Lambda(E) + \Lambda(F)$  almost surely.
- For each  $\omega$ ,  $\Lambda(\cdot)(\omega)$  is a measure over  $\Sigma$ .

If  $S$  is a finite subset of  $\Sigma$ , then the first three properties specify the desired law of  $\{\Lambda(E) : E \in S\}$  uniquely, and these laws are consistent, so that the Daniell Kolmogorov theorem guarantees the existence of a unique probability distribution  $\mathbf{P}$  on  $\mathbf{N}_\infty^\Sigma$  such that the function  $\Lambda(n, E) = n$  satisfies the three properties above. But the Daniell Kolmogorov theorem doesn't say anything about the fourth property. It is difficult to correct this, because the subset of  $\mathbf{N}_\infty^\Sigma$  consisting of all functions which form measures is not a measurable subset of  $\mathbf{N}_\infty^\Sigma$  in all but the most trivial of cases.

One way to clarify this problem is to look at the ways that two stochastic processes with the same law can differ from one another. We say a process  $X$  is a **modification** of a process  $Y$  if, for every fixed time  $t \in T$ ,  $X_t = Y_t$  almost surely. This means exactly that  $X$  and  $Y$  have the same finite distributions. We say  $X$  and  $Y$  are **indistinguishable** if the outer probability of the set  $A = \{\omega : X_t(\omega) = Y_t(\omega) \text{ for all } t\}$  is equal to 1, so we can descend to a subspace  $\Omega_0$  of  $\Omega$  upon which  $X_t = Y_t$ . Indistinguishability preserves the properties of stochastic processes we need in the theory of continuous time.

**Example.** Suppose that a Brownian motion  $B$  exists with continuous sample paths. Let  $X$  be an independent random variable to  $B$  uniformly distributed on  $[0, 1]$ , and consider the set  $A = \{x : B_{X(\omega)} = 0\}$ , define

$$\tilde{B}_t(\omega) = \begin{cases} B_t(\omega) & t \neq X \\ 1 & t = X, \omega \in A \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then for a fixed  $t$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(\tilde{B}_t = B_t) = \mathbf{P}(t \neq X) = 1$ , so  $B$  and  $\tilde{B}$  are modifications of one another, but  $B$  and  $\tilde{B}$  are not indistinguishable, because for any sample point  $\omega$ , our definition guarantees  $\tilde{B}_{X(\omega)} \neq B_{X(\omega)}$ , so

$$\mathbf{P}^*(\{\omega : \tilde{B}_t(\omega) = B_t(\omega) \text{ for all } t\}) = \mathbf{P}(\emptyset) = 0$$

Note that  $\tilde{B}$  is discontinuous, so modifications do not preserve the continuity of sample paths.

The problems of indistinguishability occur only in the continuous time setting, because it is easy to verify that countable processes are modifications of one another if and only if they are indistinguishable.

**Lemma 7.1.** *There exists a process  $X$  into  $S^T$  with a given law  $\mathbf{P}$  such that  $X(\omega) \in S_0$  for all  $\omega$ , for some subset  $S_0 \subset S$ , if and only if  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T) = 1$ .*

*Proof.* We rely on the fact that if  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T) = 1$ , then for any measurable set  $E \subset S^T$ ,  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T \cap E) = \mathbf{P}(E)$ , and the law  $\mathbf{P}$  defined over  $S^T$  descends to a probability measure on  $S_0^T$ , with  $\Sigma$  algebra consisting of sets of the form  $S_0^T \cap E$ , where  $E$  is measurable in  $S^T$ , and where the law is defined by

$$\mathbf{P}(S_0^T \cap E) = \mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T \cap E) = \mathbf{P}(E)$$

This means that if  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T) = 1$ , then we can make  $S_0^T$  into a measure space, and the projection function  $\pi_t : S_0^T \rightarrow S$  given by  $\pi_t(x) = x_t$  form a stochastic process with law  $\mathbf{P}$ , because

$$\mathbf{P}(\pi_t \in F) = \mathbf{P}^*(F \cap A^T) = \mathbf{P}(F)$$

On the other hand, if there is a process  $X$  with law  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $X(\omega) \in S_0$  for all  $\omega$ , and  $S_0^T \subset E$  for some measurable  $E \subset S^T$ , then

$$\mathbf{P}(E) = \mathbf{P}(X^{-1}(E)) = \mathbf{P}(\Omega) = 1$$

so  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T) = 1$ . □

These is never really a feasible way to calculate  $\mathbf{P}^*(S_0^T)$  for any set  $S$  independent of using this lemma, but the lemma tells us that the law  $\mathbf{P}$  can tell us about the values that all modifications of a process can take. In particular, this means we can study all the possible modifications of a stochastic process by understanding it's law. Indeed, we shall find out that if the law of a stochastic process defines a martingale over  $[0, \infty)$  then under very slight regularity conditions there is a **cádlág** version of the law, that is, a process such that  $t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is right continuous with left limits for all values  $\omega$ . In this case, the modification/indistinguishability problem disappears.

**Theorem 7.2.** *If  $X$  and  $Y$  are two right continuous processes with values in a Hausdorff space, then  $X$  and  $Y$  are modifications of one another if and only if they are indistinguishable.*

*Proof.* We calculate that

$$\{\omega : X_t(\omega) = Y_t(\omega) \text{ for all } t\} = \bigcap_{p \in \mathbf{Q}^+} \{\omega : X_p(\omega) = Y_p(\omega)\}$$

because we can take limits from above to prove equality at all points if we have equality on rational points, and the right hand side is the countable intersection of sets we know to be measurable in  $\Omega$ , hence the left hand side is measurable in  $\Omega$  also. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are modifications of one another, then each event in the intersection is a set of probability 1, so the countable intersection also has probability 1.  $\square$

If we restrict ourselves to stochastic processes  $X$  such that  $t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is càdlàg for all  $\omega$ , then  $X$  can be viewed as a measurable function into the family  $D[0, \infty)$  of càdlàg functions, which has the  $\sigma$  algebra induced from  $\mathbf{R}^{[0, \infty)}$ . We shall find that  $D[0, \infty)$  is a very useful space to analyze stochastic processes, because it contains most of the measurable sets we want to analyze. In particular,  $C[0, \infty)$  is a measurable subset of  $D[0, \infty)$ , because

$$C[0, \infty) = \bigcap_{p \in \mathbf{Q}^+} \left\{ f \in D[0, \infty) : \lim_{q \rightarrow p} f(q) = f(p) \right\}$$

where we let  $q$  range only over rational numbers. This means that it makes sense to ask whether a càdlàg process is almost surely continuous, and indeed, we can redefine a Brownian motion to be a càdlàg process which is almost surely continuous.

## 7.1 Regularity of Martingales

The definition of a martingale, supermartingale, and submartingale generalizes incredibly easily to continuous time. A filtration  $\Sigma$  on  $[0, \infty)$  is just a  $[0, \infty)$  indexed increasing family of  $\sigma$  algebras, and a **continuous time martingale** on  $[0, \infty)$  with respect to  $\Sigma$  is a  $\Sigma$  adapted process  $X$  such that for  $s \leq t$ ,  $\mathbf{E}[X_t | \Sigma_s] = X_s$ . We define continuous time supermartingales and submartingales in an analogous manner. The asymptotics of martingales will play a role in showing that the paths of the process  $\{X_p : p \in \mathbf{Q}^+\}$  can be ‘regularized’ to right continuous functions with left limits, or **càdlàg**, so that in the forthcoming analysis of continuous time martingales, we can always assume martingales are regularized in a nice fashion (we can also consider left continuous functions with right limits, known as **càglàd**, and the regularity proofs are the same).

We start by discussing when a (non random) function  $f : \mathbf{Q}^+ \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ . We start our analysis by considering the properties of  $f$  which guarantee that

we can extend  $f$  to a right continuous function with left limits, in which case we call  $f$  **regularizable**. The trick is that if

$$\lim_{p \downarrow t} f(p) = \lim_{q \uparrow t} f(q)$$

exists for all real values  $t \geq 0$ , and is finite, then we can define

$$g(t) = \lim_{p \downarrow t} f(p)$$

and then  $g$  will be right continuous with left limits. As with martingale convergence, we consider the upcrossing values  $U_n[a, b]$  to be the maximum  $n$  such that we can find rational numbers

$$0 \leq p_1 < q_1 < p_2 < \cdots < p_n < q_n \leq n$$

where  $f(p_i) < a$ ,  $f(q_i) > b$ . If the choice of  $n$  is unbounded, we let  $U_n[a, b] = \infty$ .

**Lemma 7.3.**  *$f$  is regularizable if and only if for any integer  $n$  and rational numbers  $a < b$ , we have*

$$\sup\{|f(q)| : q \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]\} < \infty \quad U_n[a, b] < \infty$$

*Proof.* If  $\sup\{|f(q)| : q \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]\} = \infty$  for some  $n$ , then we can choose a monotonic family  $q_1, q_2, \dots$  with  $|f(q_k)| > k$  converging to some value, and then the required limits at this value. Similarly, if  $U_n[a, b] = \infty$ , then we can set  $t^* = \inf\{t : U_t[a, b] = \infty\}$ , and if  $U_{t^*}[a, b] = \infty$ , then we can obtain an infinite oscillating family on the left converging to  $t^*$  breaking the limit properties of  $t^*$ , or  $U_{t^*}[a, b] < \infty$ , and then we can find an infinite oscillating family on the right converging to  $t^*$ . On the other hand, if  $f$  does not have left or right limits at a point, and the values of  $|f(q)|$  are bounded on the interval at this point, then we can find an infinitely oscillating family for some  $a, b$ , by setting  $a$  to be the liminf of the values around this point, and  $b$  the limsup around the point.  $\square$

**Corollary 7.4.** *If  $\{X_q : q \in \mathbf{Q}^+\}$  is a real valued stochastic process, then*

$$E = \{\omega : q \mapsto Y_q(\omega) \text{ is regularizable}\}$$

*is measurable.*

*Proof.* We have exhibited conditions such that  $X(E) \subset \mathbf{R}^{[0,\infty)}$  is described as a countable intersection of measurable cylinders in  $\mathbf{R}^{[0,\infty)}$ , which therefore are measurable, and this also means the inverse image of the set is measurable, which is  $E$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 7.5.** *Let  $X$  be a supermartingale, fix  $t \in [0, \infty)$  and  $q_1 > q_2 > \dots$  is a decreasing sequence of rationals which tend to  $t$ , then  $X_{q_i}$  converges pointwise almost everywhere and in the  $L^1$  norm, to a function invariant of the particular sequence  $q_i$ .*

*Proof.* The sequence  $X_{q_1}, X_{q_2}, \dots$  is a reverse supermartingale, and the expectation is upper bounded, because we calculate  $\mathbf{E}(X_{q_i}) < \mathbf{E}(X_t)$ , which immediately gives the result by the Lévy Doob downward theorem. Interlacing two decreasing sequences of rationals shows the convergence is invariant of the particular values chosen.  $\square$

The same results hold if  $X$  is a submartingale, but now we need to lower bound the infimum of  $\mathbf{E}[X_{q_i}]$ , and  $X_t$  can be used for this purpose.

**Theorem 7.6** (Doob Regularity Theorem). *If  $X$  is a supermartingale, then  $X$  is regularizable almost surely, and if we define*

$$Y_t = \begin{cases} \lim_{q \downarrow t} X_q(\omega) & : q \mapsto X_q(\omega) \text{ is regularizable} \\ 0 & : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

*Then  $Y$  is a càdlàg process.*

*Proof.* Because of our discussion, we need only show that for a fixed  $n$ ,  $a < b \in \mathbf{Q}^+$ , that

$$\mathbf{P}(\sup\{|X_q(\omega)| : q \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]\} < \infty) = 1$$

$$\mathbf{P}(U_n[a, b] < \infty) = 1$$

where  $U_n[a, b]$  is the upcrossing number applied to  $Y|_{\mathbf{Q}^+}$ . If  $D_1, D_2, \dots$  are a sequence of finite subsets of  $\mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]$ , each containing 0 and  $n$ , and with  $D_m \uparrow \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]$ , then for a fixed  $\lambda$ , we know that

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{P}(\sup\{|X_q| : q \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap [0, n]\} > 3\lambda) \\ &= \lim \mathbf{P}(\sup\{|X_q| : q \in D_m\}) \\ &\leq \frac{4\mathbf{E}|X_0| + 3\mathbf{E}|X_n|}{\lambda} \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$  gives the first result. By the upcrossing lemma, if  $U_n^{D_m}[a, b]$  denotes the number of upcrossings just over the finite set  $D_m$ , we know

$$\mathbf{E}[U_n[a, b]] = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{E}[U_n^{D_m}[a, b]] \leq \frac{\mathbf{E}|X_n| + |a|}{b - a}$$

and therefore  $U_n[a, b] \in L^1(\Omega)$ , so therefore  $U_n[a, b] \in L^1(\Omega)$ , and  $\mathbf{P}(U_n[a, b] < \infty) = 1$ . This is where the step-independent result of the upcrossing lemma are *integral* to our result.  $\square$

There are only a few things left to do before we can make the switch from studying  $X$  to studying  $Y$ . First, we must argue that  $Y$  is a modification of  $X$ . Second, we need to conclude that  $Y$  is a (sub/super) martingale with respect to the filtration of  $X$ , and this is where we run into irregularities.

**Example.** Suppose  $\Omega = \{\pm 1\}$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(\pm 1) = 1/2$ , and  $\Sigma_t = \{\emptyset, \Omega\}$  for  $t \leq 1$ , and  $\Sigma_t = 2^\Omega$  for  $t > 1$ . Suppose that for  $\omega \in \Omega$ ,

$$X_t(\omega) = \begin{cases} \omega & : t > 1 \\ 0 & : t \leq 1 \end{cases}$$

Then  $X$  is a martingale relative to the filtration  $\Sigma_t$ , and it's regularization is

$$Y_t(\omega) = \begin{cases} \omega & : t \geq 1 \\ 0 & : t < 1 \end{cases}$$

Note that  $Y_1$  is not even adapted to  $\Sigma_1$ , so  $Y$  cannot possibly still be a martingale relative to the filtration  $\Sigma$ . Moreover,  $\mathbf{P}(X_1 = Y_1) = 0$ , so  $Y$  isn't a modification of  $X$  either, so it seems that Doob's regularity theorem is doomed to fail!

The first problem we erase is that  $Y$  might not be adapted to the required filtration. However, by it's construction, we can fix this by enlarging our filtrations 'infinitesimally'. By construction,  $Y_t$  will be adapted to the *partial augmentation*

$$\Sigma_{t+} = \lim_{u \downarrow t} \Sigma_u$$

If we assume our filtration is **right continuous**, in that  $\Sigma_{t+} = \Sigma_t$  for all  $t$ , then the problem 'almost' doesn't occur. The only possibly non  $\Sigma_t$ -measurable set involved in the construction is then

$$\{\omega : t \mapsto X_t(\omega) \text{ is regularizable}\}$$

which is a subset of the  $\sigma$  algebra  $N(\Sigma_\infty)$  of  $\Sigma_\infty$  measurable subsets with probability 0 or 1, we will also need to assume that  $N(\Sigma_\infty) \subset \Sigma_t$  for each  $t$ . Thus it makes sense to define the *partial augmentation*  $\Sigma'_t = \sigma(\Sigma_{t+}, N(\Sigma_\infty))$ .

**Theorem 7.7.** *For any supermartingale  $X$ ,  $Y$  is a supermartingale relative to  $\Sigma'$ , and  $Y$  is a modification of  $X$  if and only if the map  $t \mapsto Y_t$  is a right continuous map into  $L^1(\Omega)$ , in the sense that  $\lim_{s \downarrow t} \|Y_t - Y_s\|_1 = 0$  for all  $t \geq 0$ .*

*Proof.* Fix  $0 \leq t < s$ . Suppose  $s > q_1 > q_2 > \dots \rightarrow t$ . It is easy to verify that  $\mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma_{q_n}) \leq X_{q_n}$ , considering  $Z_n = \mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma_{q_n})$  as a reverse martingale, the Lévy-Doob downward theorem for martingales allows us to conclude that  $\mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma_{t+}) \leq Y_t$ . Since  $N(\Sigma_\infty)$  is trivially independent of every other  $\sigma$  algebra, we find  $\mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma'_t) = \mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma_{t+}) \leq Y_t$ . Now the Doob downward theorem guarantees that if we let  $s$  be rational, and then let  $s \downarrow t$ , then the convergence of  $X_s$  to  $Y_t$  will be in the  $L^1$  norm, and so

$$\mathbf{E}(Y_s | \Sigma'_t) = \lim_{s \downarrow t} \mathbf{E}(X_s | \Sigma'_t) \leq Y_t$$

hence we have shown  $Y_s$  is a supermartingale. It now follows from the convergence definition of  $Y$  that  $Y$  is right continuous in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and since we know that if  $q_n \downarrow t$  then  $X_{q_n} \rightarrow Y_t$  in  $L^1$ , it follows that  $X$  is a modification of  $Y$  at  $t$  if and only if  $X$  is right continuous.  $\square$

Even with this theorem, we aren't exactly satisfied by the regularity theorem, because it turns out that the filtration  $\Sigma'$  does not have rich enough class of stopping times for the continuous time theory to work. It is often useful to assume the *usual conditions*, which require that the total  $\sigma$  algebra over the probability space is complete, each  $\Sigma_t$  contains all  $\mathbf{P}$  null sets, and  $\Sigma_t$  is right continuous. This subsumes the partial augmentation considered above. We let  $\Sigma^*$  denote the smallest filtration larger than  $\Sigma$  satisfying the usual conditions. It can be obtained by first enlarging the  $\Delta$  sigma algebra over the sample space to a complete sigma algebra  $\Delta^*$ , setting  $N(\Delta)$  to be the class of null sets in  $\Delta^*$  then setting

$$\Sigma_t^* = \bigcap_{s > t} \sigma(\Sigma_s, N(\Delta)) = \sigma(\Sigma_{t+}, N(\Delta))$$

Since  $\Sigma'$  differs from  $\Sigma^*$  only by  $\mathbf{P}$  null sets, the independence properties of conditional expectation guarantee that the theorem above still holds if we swap  $\Sigma'$  with  $\Sigma^*$ . To summarize our discussion, the regularity theorem



guarantees that we can take a supermartingale  $X$  with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma$ , and *regularize* it to a càdlàg supermartingale  $Y$  with respect to the filtration  $\Sigma^*$ .

**Theorem 7.8.** *If  $\Omega$  with a filtration  $\Sigma$  satisfying the usual conditions, and  $X$  is a supermartingale, then  $X$  has a càdlàg modification  $Y$  if and only if the map  $t \mapsto \mathbf{E}(Y_t)$  from  $[0, \infty)$  to  $\mathbf{R}$  is right continuous, and then  $Y$  is a càdlàg supermartingale with respect to  $\Sigma$ .*

*Proof.* From the supermartingale property of  $X$ , we know that for  $s > t$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(X_s|\Sigma_t) \leq X_t$ . Applying the regularity theory allows us to construct  $Y$ , which we know is also a supermartingale with respect to  $\Sigma$ , except that  $Y$  might not be a version of  $X$ . Since  $X_p \rightarrow Y_t$  in  $L^1$  if  $p \downarrow t$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , then we obtain

$$Y_t = \mathbf{E}(Y_t|\Sigma_t) = \lim_{p \downarrow t} \mathbf{E}(X_p|\Sigma_t) \leq X_t$$

If the map  $t \mapsto \mathbf{E}(X_t)$  is right continuous, then since  $X_p \rightarrow Y_t$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , we conclude that  $\mathbf{E}(Y_t) = \lim_{p \downarrow t} \mathbf{E}(X_p) = \mathbf{E}(X_t)$ , and this shows  $Y_t = X_t$  almost everywhere. On the other hand, if  $X$  has a càdlàg modification then it is trivial to verify the expectation is right continuous.  $\square$

**Lemma 7.9.** *If  $X$  is a right continuous supermartingale with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma$ , then  $X$  is a supermartingale with respect to  $\Sigma^*$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $0 \leq t < s$ . We may assume that  $\Sigma$  has all the completion properties required of  $\Sigma^*$ , except for right continuity, by adding all the required null sets, which are independent of any conditional expectation. If  $s \geq s_1 > s_2 > \dots \rightarrow t$ , then the supermartingale property implies that  $\mathbf{E}[X_s|\Sigma_{s_i}] \leq X_{s_i}$ . The Doob downward theorem guarantees that the left hand side implies that

$$\mathbf{E}[X_s|\Sigma_{t+}] = \lim \mathbf{E}[X_s|\Sigma_{s_i}] \leq \lim X_{s_i} = X_t$$

and  $\Sigma_{t+} = \Sigma^*$  if  $\Sigma$  contains all the null sets required.  $\square$

## 7.2 Regularization of Brownian Motion and the Markov Property

There are still a couple regularity problems we need to fix, that can be best displayed in an example. Consider the pre-Brownian motion  $X$  on

$\mathbf{R}^{[0,\infty)}$  constructed by the Daniell Kolmogorov theorem. With respect to the natural filtration

$$\Sigma_t = \sigma(Y_s : s \leq t)$$

Then  $X$  is a martingale with respect to  $\Sigma_t$ . The martingale is also right continuous in  $L^1$ , so we can construct a right continuous martingale  $Y$  with respect to the  $\Sigma^*$ . But now various questions are raised. With respect to  $\Sigma_t$ ,  $X$  is a Markov process, in the sense that

$$\mathbf{E}[X_t | \Sigma_s] = \mathbf{E}[X_t | X_s]$$

Now that  $\Sigma^*$  can look infinitesimally into the future, is it still true that the Markov property holds? If  $\Sigma$  is already right continuous, this is fine, because then  $\Sigma^*$  only contains null sets which we can't gain any information from. But now we need a further analysis.

**Theorem 7.10.** *For a pre-Brownian motion  $X$ ,*

- $\sigma(X_{t+s} - X_t : s \geq 0)$  is independent of  $\Sigma_{t+}$ .
- $\Sigma_{t+} \subset \sigma(\Sigma_t, N(\Sigma_\infty))$ .

*The first property says that looking infinitesimally ahead does not destroy independence, and that  $\Sigma_{t+}$  doesn't even look ahead of  $t$ , because every element of  $\Sigma_{t+}$  differs from a  $\Sigma_t$  set by a null set.*

*Proof.* For any  $\varepsilon$ ,  $X_{t+s+\varepsilon} - X_{t+\varepsilon}$  is independent of  $\Sigma_{t+\varepsilon/2}$ . If  $E \in \Sigma_{t+}$ , and  $f$  is a bounded continuous function on  $\mathbf{R}$ , then we conclude

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}[f(X_{t+s_1+\varepsilon} - X_{t+\varepsilon}, \dots, X_{t+s_n+\varepsilon} - X_{t+\varepsilon}); E] \\ = \mathbf{P}(E) \mathbf{E}[f(X_{t+s_1+\varepsilon} - X_{t+\varepsilon}, \dots, X_{t+s_n+\varepsilon} - X_{t+\varepsilon})] \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ , and applying the bounded convergence theorem, we conclude that

$$\mathbf{E}[f(X_{t+s_1} - X_t, \dots, X_{t+s_n} - X_t); E] = \mathbf{P}(E) \mathbf{E}[f(X_{t+s_1} - X_t, \dots, X_{t+s_n} - X_t)]$$

We can then apply the monotone class theorem to show that this equation holds for every Borel function  $f$ , whence in particular we conclude that the sigma algebra  $\sigma(X_{t+s_1} - X_t, \dots, X_{t+s_n} - X_t)$  is independent of  $\Sigma_{t+}$ . But this means that  $\Sigma_{t+}$  is independent of every event  $E$  in the  $\pi$  system of

events which are in  $\sigma(X_{t+s_1} - X_t, \dots, X_{t+s_n} - X_t)$  for some finite choice of  $s_1, \dots, s_n$ , and this  $\pi$  system generates the entire  $\sigma$  algebra.

To prove the second property, we note that

$$\Sigma_\infty = \sigma(\Sigma_t, \sigma(X_{t+s} - X_t : s \geq 0))$$

and therefore  $\Sigma_\infty$  is generated by a  $\pi$  system of sets of the form  $E_t \cap F_t$ , where  $E \in \Sigma_t$ , and  $F \in \sigma(X_{t+s} - X_t : s \geq 0)$ . Let  $Y$  be bounded and  $\Sigma_{t+}$  measurable, and consider  $Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$ . It suffices to show that  $Y = \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$  almost surely, for then  $Y$  differs from a  $\Sigma_t$  measurable function on a  $\Sigma_\infty$  measurable nullset, so  $Y$  is  $\sigma(\Sigma_t, N(\Sigma_\infty))$  measurable. Since  $Y$  is  $\Sigma_{t+}$  measurable, we know that  $Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$  is independent of  $\sigma(X_{t+s} - X_t : s \geq 0)$ , and so

$$\mathbf{E}[Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]; E_t \cap F_t] = \mathbf{P}(F_t) \mathbf{E}[Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]; E_t] = 0$$

This means that the integral of  $Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$  vanishes over every  $\Sigma_\infty$  measurable set, and since  $Y - \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$  is  $\Sigma_\infty$  measurable, we conclude  $Y = \mathbf{E}[Y|\Sigma_t]$  almost surely.  $\square$

The consequence of this is that if we regularize  $X$  to a càdlàg pre-Brownian motion  $Y$ , then  $\sigma(Y_{t+u} - Y_t)$  is independent of  $\Sigma_t^*$ , and  $\Sigma_t^* = \sigma(\Sigma_t, N(\Sigma))$ .

### 7.3 Kolmogorov's Continuity Criterion

# Chapter 8

## Continuous Time Martingales

Almost all the main results of martingale theory extend to the continuous time, provided we place the extra regularity criterion that our martingales are càdlàg. The last chapter guarantees that the laws defining all martingales are essentially càdlàg, so the laws are essentially as general as in the discrete case.

### 8.1 Continuous Time Convergence Theorems

**Theorem 8.1** (Doob's Convergence Theorem). *Let  $X$  be a càdlàg  $\Sigma_t$  (sub/super) martingale which is bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . Then  $X_\infty = \lim X_t$  exists almost surely.*

*Proof.* By right continuity, the almost sure limit makes sense, because it is equal to the limit over rational points tending to  $\infty$ . Since  $t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is right continuous,

$$\liminf_{t \rightarrow \infty} X_t(\omega) = \liminf_{p \rightarrow \infty} X_p(\omega) \quad \limsup_{s \rightarrow \infty} X_s(\omega) = \limsup_{q \rightarrow \infty} X_q(\omega)$$

If we choose rational  $a, b$  such that

$$\liminf_{p \rightarrow \infty} X_p(\omega) < a < b < \limsup_{q \rightarrow \infty} X_q(\omega)$$

then  $U_\infty([a, b], X|_{\mathbf{Q}^+}) = \infty$ , yet

$$\mathbf{E}U_\infty(X|_{\mathbf{Q}^+}) \leq \frac{\sup \mathbf{E}|X_t| + |a|}{b - a} < \infty$$

so convergence can only *not occur* on a set of probability zero.  $\square$

The following theorem is proven as it was for discrete martingales.

**Theorem 8.2** (Doob's Convergence Theorem). *If  $X$  is a  $L^1$  bounded uniformly continuous supermartingale then  $X_t \rightarrow X_\infty$  in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and  $\mathbf{E}[X_\infty|\Sigma_t] \leq X_t$ . If  $X$  is a submartingale, then  $\mathbf{E}[X_\infty|\Sigma_t] \geq X_t$ . If  $X$  is an  $L^1$  bounded martingale, then  $\mathbf{E}[X_\infty|\Sigma_t] = X_t$ , and  $X \rightarrow X_\infty$  in  $L^1$  if and only if  $X$  is uniformly integrable (this is NOT true for sub and supermartingales).*

*Proof.* The only new thing here is that if  $X$  is a martingale, then  $X \rightarrow X_\infty$  if and only if  $X$  is uniformly integrable, which follows because the family

$$\{\mathbf{E}[X_\infty|\Sigma_t]\}$$

is uniformly integrable, and  $\mathbf{E}[X_\infty|\Sigma_t] = X_t$ . □

**Theorem 8.3** (Doob's Downward Theorem). *If  $X$  is a càdlàg supermartingale on  $(0, \infty)$ , and  $\sup \mathbf{E}(X_t) < \infty$ , then  $X_0 = \lim_{t \downarrow 0} X_t$  exists almost surely and in  $L^1$  and  $\mathbf{E}(X_t|\Sigma_{0+}) \leq X_0$ . If  $X$  is a submartingale and  $\inf \mathbf{E}(X_t) > -\infty$  the same holds.*

**Theorem 8.4** (Upward Theorem). *Suppose that we are using a filtration satisfying the usual conditions. If  $X$  is integrable, then there exists a uniformly integrable càdlàg martingale  $X_t$  with  $X_t = \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_t]$  almost surely, and  $X_t \rightarrow \mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_\infty]$  almost surely and in  $L^1$ .*

*Proof.* We know that  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_t]$  is a martingale. By the Lévy Doob downward theorem, if we take  $p$  over all rational numbers, then the Doob downward theorem guarantees that

$$\lim_{s \downarrow t} \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_s]] = \mathbf{E}[X] = \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_t]]$$

It follows that we can choose  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma_t]$  to be càdlàg. Uniform integrability is obvious, and the rest of the theorem follows from the Doob convergence theorem. □

**Theorem 8.5.** *If  $X$  is a non-negative càdlàg submartingale, then*

$$\lambda \mathbf{P}(\sup_{s \leq t} X_s \geq \lambda) \leq \mathbf{E} \left[ X_t; \sup_{s \leq t} X_s \geq \lambda \right] \leq \mathbf{E}[X_t]$$

*Proof.* Let  $D_1, D_2, \dots$  be an increasing sequence of finite subsets of  $[0, t]$  whose limit is dense. Then for each  $\omega$ ,

$$\sup_{0 \leq s \leq t} X_s(\omega) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{s \in D_n} X_s(\omega)$$

It follows that

$$\left\{ \sup_{0 \leq s \leq t} X_s > \lambda \right\} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \sup_{s \in D_n} X_s > \lambda \right\}$$

(Note the importance of the strict inequality  $>$  rather than  $\geq$ ). We now just apply the discrete result on  $D_n$ , and let  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 8.6** (Doob's  $L^p$  Inequality). *Let  $p > 1$ ,  $q = p^*$ . If  $X$  is a non-negative càdlàg submartingale bounded in  $L^p$ , then  $X^* = \sup X_t$  is in  $L^p$ , and*

$$\|X^*\|_p \leq q \sup \|X_t\|_p$$

*The process  $X$  is therefore uniformly dominated by  $X^*$ .  $X_\infty = \lim X_t$  exists almost surely and in  $L^p$ , and*

$$\|X_\infty\|_p = \sup \|X_t\|_p = \lim \|X_t\|_p$$

*If  $X = |M|$ , where  $M$  is a càdlàg martingale bounded in  $L^p$ , then  $M_\infty$  exists almost surely in  $L^p$  and  $\mathbf{E}(M_\infty | \Sigma_t) = M_t$ .*

## 8.2 Stopping Times

We now consider the natural equivalent of a discrete stopping time. A  $[0, \infty]$  valued random variable  $T$  is a **stopping time** with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma$  if  $\{T \leq t\} \in \Sigma_t$  for each  $t \leq \infty$ . Given  $T$ , we define the pre  $\sigma$  algebra  $\Sigma_T$  as the set of events  $E$  such that  $E \cap \{T \leq t\} \in \Sigma_t$  for each  $t$ .

**Lemma 8.7.** *The following hold for all stopping times  $S$  and  $T$ ,*

- *If  $S \leq T$ ,  $\Sigma_S \subset \Sigma_T$ .*
- *$\Sigma_{S \wedge T} = \Sigma_S \cap \Sigma_T$ .*
- *If  $E \in \Sigma_{S \vee T}$ ,  $E \cap \{S \leq T\} \in \Sigma_T$ .*

- $\Sigma_{S \vee T} = \sigma(\Sigma_S, \Sigma_T)$ .

*Proof.* The proof of the first two properties is exactly the same as for discrete martingales, as is the fourth once the third is proved, and this is proven by a slight modification of the discrete argument. If  $E \in \Sigma_{S \vee T}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} E \cap \{S \leq T\} \cap \{T \leq n\} &= E \cap \{S \vee T \leq n\} \cap \{S \leq T \leq n\} \\ &= E \cap \{S \vee T \leq n\} \cap \left[ \{S = T \leq n\} \cup \bigcup_{\substack{q \leq n \\ q \in \mathbf{Q}^+}} (\{S \leq q\} \cap \{q \leq T \leq n\}) \right] \end{aligned}$$

and this last set is easily seen to be in  $\Sigma_n$ . □

## Chapter 9

# Continuous Time Markov Processes

In some mathematical circumstances, we may approximate a continuous system by a simpler system, which enables us to derive approximate results more simply. For instance, we often replace a Newtonian system by its linear approximation, which enables us to use the fleshed-out theory of linear differential equations to obtain an analytic formula for how the system develops. Nonetheless, in some mathematical systems it is worthwhile keeping a continuous system, which leads to more precise and concise results.

In the last chapter, we considered a discrete-time queue, with individuals arriving and exiting at each separate time epoch. In this chapter, we will extend this model to a real-time queue, with individuals arriving and exiting at separate moments occurring at any real time-epoch.

### 9.1 Poisson Processes

Our first trick to modelling a real-time queueing system  $\{Y_t\}$  is to split the queue into two parts,  $Y_t = X_t - Z_t$ . The first split,  $X_t$ , is a counter, which tells us how many people in total have ever entered the queue. The second part,  $Z_t$ , tells us how many people in total have left the queue. By understanding these processes separately, we can understand  $Y_t$ .

What assumptions do we make about the ‘counting process’  $\{Y_t\}_{t \in [0, \infty)}$ . Firstly, the counter should be increasing: the total number of people who



have entered the store should not decrease over time. Secondly, to simplify things, we shall assume that the average number of customers arriving is constant, and that the number of customers arriving at disjoint intervals are independent of one another. This is a Poisson process.

**Definition.** A stochastic process  $\{X_t\}$  valued in  $\mathbf{N}$  is Poisson with arrival length  $\lambda > 0$  if:

1.  $X_0 = 0$ , and  $i \leq j$  implies  $X_i \leq X_j$ .
2. Disjoint intervals  $(i_k, j_k)$  have independent differences  $X_{j_k} - X_{i_k}$ , and if  $i \leq j$ , then  $X_j - X_i$  is equal in distribution to  $X_{j-i}$ .
3. The Process satisfies the equations

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = 1) = \lambda \Delta t + o(t) \quad (9.1)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = 0) = 1 - \lambda \Delta t + o(t) \quad (9.2)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t > 1) = o(t) \quad (9.3)$$

These axioms determine a unique probability distribution. Define  $P_k(t) = \mathbf{P}(X_t = k)$ . We have  $P_0(0) = 1$ , and  $P_k(0) = 0$  for  $k > 0$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} P_k(t + \Delta t) &= \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = k, X_t = k) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = k, X_t = k - 1) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = k, X_t < k - 1) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} - X_t = 0, X_t - X_0 = k) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} - X_t = 1, X_t - X_0 = k - 1) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = k, X_t - X_0 < k - 1) \\ &= P_0(\Delta t)P_k(t) + P_1(\Delta t)P_{k-1}(t) + o(\Delta t) \\ &= P_k(t) - \lambda \Delta t P_k(t) + \lambda \Delta t P_{k-1}(t) + o(\Delta t) \end{aligned}$$

It therefore follows that  $P'_k = \lambda(P_{k-1} - P_k)$ . This is just an ordinary differential equation. Altering the derivation above, noting we only need the first term for  $k = 0$ , we have

$$P'_0 = -\lambda P_0 \quad P_0(0) = 1$$

So  $P_0(t) = e^{-\lambda t}$ . We shall now show that  $P_k(t) = t^k/k!e^{-\lambda t}$ . Define  $f_k(t) = P_k(t)e^{\lambda t}$  (so that, if our theorem is true  $f_k(t) = t^k/k!$ ). We have

$$f'_k(t) = \lambda P_k(t)e^{\lambda t} + \lambda(P_{k-1}(t) - P_k(t))e^{\lambda t} = P_{k-1}e^{\lambda t} = f'_{k-1}(t)$$

And it follows that  $f_k(t) = t^k/k!$ , since  $f_k(0) = P_k(0) = 0$ . The Poisson distribution  $\text{Poisson}(k, \lambda)$  is just the distribution of  $P_k$ .

Another natural way to understand Poisson processes is by directly studying the discrete timepoints at which the counter of the process increments. Fix a Poisson process  $\{X_t\}$ , and define a stopping time  $\tau_k = \inf\{t : X_t \geq k\}$ . Since  $X_t$  is monotonic, this variable is well-defined. The variables  $\tau_{k+1} - \tau_k$  should be independent and identically distributed, and the  $\tau_k$  should satisfy the ‘memory loss’ property

$$\mathbf{P}(\tau_{k+1} - \tau_k \geq s + t | \tau_{k+1} - \tau_k \geq t) = \mathbf{P}(T_k \geq s)$$

The only left-continuous non-zero real-valued functions  $f$  which satisfies  $f(s + t) = f(s)f(t)$  are the family of exponential functions  $f(t) = e^{-\lambda t}$ . Hence any variables  $\{\tau_k\}$  satisfying the properties above have  $\mathbf{P}(\tau_{k+1} - \tau_k \geq t) = \mathbf{P}(\tau_1 \geq t) = e^{-\lambda t}$  for some  $\lambda$ .

Given any variables  $\tau_k$  satisfying the assumptions above, define  $X_t = \inf\{k : \tau_k \geq t\}$ . Then  $X_0 = 0$ ,  $\{X_t\}$  is increasing, and

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = 1) = \mathbf{P}(\inf\{k : \tau_k \geq t\} = 1) = \mathbf{P}(\tau_1 \leq t) = 1 - e^{-\lambda t} = \lambda t + o(t)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = 0) = \mathbf{P}(\tau_1 \geq t) = e^{-\lambda t} = 1 - \lambda t + o(t)$$

If  $(i_k, j_k)$  are disjoint, then  $X_{j_k} - X_{i_k} = \inf\{k : \tau_k - \tau_{k-1} \geq j_k\} - \inf\{k : \tau_k \geq i_k\}$ . Hence  $\{X_t\}$  is a Poisson process.

Consider the following calculation

$$\mathbf{E}(\tau_1) = \int_0^\infty \frac{\lambda t}{e^{\lambda t}} dt = \left. \frac{t + \lambda^{-1}}{e^{\lambda t}} \right|_{t=\infty}^0 = \lambda^{-1} - \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{t + \lambda^{-1}}{e^{\lambda t}} = \lambda^{-1} - \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\lambda e^{\lambda t}} = \lambda^{-1}$$

So that in a Poisson process, we should expect to wait on average  $\lambda^{-1}$  for each event.

## 9.2 Continuous Time Markov Process

Let's now consider an arbitrary Markov process  $\{X_t\}$  in continuous time on a denumerable state space. For each time point  $t$  and  $u$ , we have the

transition probabilities  $P_{u,t}(x,y) = \mathbf{P}(X_t = y | X_u = x)$ . We still have the Kolmogorov equation

$$P_{u,v}(x,z) = \sum_t P_{u,t}(x,y) P(t,v)(y,z) \quad (9.4)$$

We shall also assume a continuity requirement that

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow i^+} \mathbf{P}(X_j = x | X_i = y) = \delta_{x,y} \quad (9.5)$$

A process is **time-homogenous** if

$$P_{u,t}(x,y) = P_{t-u,0}(x,y) \quad (9.6)$$

If we define a transformation  $P_t(x,y) = \mathbf{P}(X_t = y | X_0 = x)$ , as well as a multiplication rule  $(P_t P_s)(x,y) = \sum_z P_t(x,z) P_s(z,y)$ , then we obtain from (9.4) and (9.6) that  $P_{t+s} = P_t P_s$ , so that  $\{P_t\}$  forms a commutative monoid.

To obtain genuine derivations of probability distributions on homogenous Markov processes, we shall restrict ourselves to probability distributions which are differentiable. Apparently (I haven't seen the proof), any time-homogenous Markov process can be written

$$P_t(x,y) = t\alpha(x,y) + o(t)$$

for some value  $\alpha(x,y)$ , where  $x \neq y$ . We call  $\alpha(x,y)$  the infinitesimal generator of the system – we think of it as the rate at which a state  $x$  changes to a state  $y$ . We then obtain

$$P_t(x,x) = 1 - \sum_{x \neq y} P_t(x,y) = 1 - \sum_{x \neq y} [t\alpha(x,y) + o(t)]$$

In the finite case, we may conclude  $P_t(x,x) = 1 - \sum_{x \neq y} t\alpha(x,y) + o(t)$ . It thus makes sense to define  $\alpha(x) = \sum_{y \neq x} \alpha(x,y)$  (even if our state space is denumerable) – it is the rate at which the process leaves  $x$ . This constitutes the definition of a process.

**Definition.** The **rates** of a time-homogenous Markov process  $\{X_t\}$  are values  $\alpha$  for which

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = x | X_0 = x) = 1 - \alpha(x)t + o(t)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_t = y | X_0 = x) = \alpha(x, y)t + o(t)$$

The average amount of time for a state to transition out of a state  $x$  is  $1/\alpha(x)$ . The probability that the next state we will end up at is  $y$  from  $x$  is  $\alpha(x, y)/\alpha(x)$ . The waiting time is an exponential distribution, with  $\mathbf{P}(\tau_x \leq t | X_0 = x) = 1 - e^{-\alpha(x)t}$ .

Assume our state space is finite, and enumerate the states  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ . Define a matrix  $P$  by  $P_{i,j} = \alpha(x_i, x_j)$  for  $i \neq j$ , and  $A_{i,i} = -\alpha(x_i)$ . We call  $A$  the infinitesimal generator of the chain. If  $\mu_t$  denotes the probability mass function at a certain time (seen as a row vector), then via an analogous proof to when we analyzed Poisson processes, we can verify that

$$\mu'(t) = \mu_t P$$

By the theory of linear differential equations, this means

$$\mu_t = \mu_0 e^{tA} = P(0) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(tA)^k}{k!}$$

In general, we consider the action  $\mu P(y) = \sum \mu(x) P(x, y)$ . Then  $(\mu P)' = \mu P$  holds for countable state-spaces.

**Example.** Consider a Markov chain with infinitesimal generator

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

We may diagonalize this matrix as  $Q^{-1}AQ$ , where

$$Q^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 2/3 & 1/3 \\ 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence

$$\mu_t = \mu_0 \begin{pmatrix} 2/3 & 1/3 \\ 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{P(0)}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 2 + e^{-3t} & 2 - 2e^{-3t} \\ 1 - e^{-3t} & 1 + 2e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix}$$

As  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mu_t \rightarrow (2/3, 1/3)$ .

In general, we shall find that for an irreducible markov chain, there is a single eigenvector with eigenvalue zero, and all other eigenvectors have negative eigenvalue (we need not worry about periodicity for continuous chains). The  $\mu_t$  will converge to the single eigenvector, invariant of the initial distribution, and this is the unique  $\mu$  for which  $\mu P = 0$ .

Suppose we want to compute the mean passage times  $E(\rho_y)$ , where  $\rho_y = \min\{t : X_t = y | X_0 = x\}$ . Define  $\beta(x)$  be the average time it takes to get to  $y$  given we start in  $x$ . Then

$$\beta(y) = 0 \quad \beta(x) = 1/\alpha(x) + \sum_{z \neq y} \frac{\alpha(x, z)}{\alpha(x)} \beta(z)$$

Then  $\alpha(x)\beta(x) = 1 + \sum \alpha(x, z)\beta(z)$ . We can write this as  $0 = 1 + \tilde{A}\beta$ , where  $\tilde{A}$  is obtained from  $A$  by deleting the row and column representing  $y$ , which has the solution  $\beta = -\tilde{A}^{-1}1$ .

### 9.3 Birth and Death Processes

**Definition.** A Birth and Death process is a continuous markov-process taking states in  $\mathbf{N}$ , with rates  $\alpha(n, n+1) = \lambda_n$ , and  $\alpha(n, n-1) = \mu_n$ , with  $\mu_0 = 0$  (no-one can die if no-one is alive). Thus

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = n | X_t = n) = 1 - (\mu_n + \lambda_n)\Delta t + o(\Delta t)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = n+1 | X_t = n) = \lambda_n \Delta t + o(\Delta t)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X_{t+\Delta t} = n-1 | X_t = n) = \mu_n \Delta t + o(\Delta t)$$

We have already considered a special case of birth and death processes. We can convert these equations into a system of differential equations,

defining  $P_n(t) = \mathbf{P}(X_t = n)$ .

$$P'_n(t) = \mu_{n+1}P_{n+1}(t) + \lambda_{n-1}P_{n-1}(t) - (\mu_n + \lambda_n)P_n(t)$$

This has a unique solution given a starting point  $n$ , so  $P_n(0) = 1$ , and  $P_m(0) = 0$  for  $m \neq n$ .

**Example.** A Poisson process with rate  $\lambda$  is a birth and death process with  $\lambda_n = \lambda$  and  $\mu_n = 0$ , for all  $n$ . Our differential equation was

$$P'_n(t) = \lambda P_{n-1}(t) - \lambda P_n(t)$$

Which we solved recursively.

Here we shall address queueing theory, the main application of continuous markov chains. There are many different types of queues, and in the literature there is a standard code for describing a specific type of queue. The basic code uses 3 characters, and is written  $A/S/c$ , where  $A$ ,  $S$  and  $C$  are substituted for common letters. Here we will be considering  $M/M/c$  queues.  $A$  is the type describing the distribution of customers arriving at a queue and  $M$  means arrivals are memoryless, or Markov.  $S$  describes the distribution time to serve a customer. Here,  $S$  will be  $M$ , since the distribution will also be markov. Finally,  $c$  stands for the number of servers, which can range from  $1, 2, \dots, \infty$ .

An  $M/M/1$  queue has only one person being served at each time. Thus, modelling the queue as a birth and death process,  $\lambda_i = \lambda$  for some fixed  $\lambda$ , and  $\mu_i = \mu$  for a fixed  $\mu$ . In an  $M/M/c$  queue, for  $1 < k < \infty$ , up to  $c$  people may be served at any time. Thus if  $n$  people have arrived in the queue, with  $n \leq c$ , then the queue 'kills'  $n$  times faster than if one server was working, so  $\lambda_k = \lambda$ , and  $\mu_k = \min(c, k)\mu$ , for some  $\mu$ . This formula also works if  $c = \infty$ .

We can understand a birth and death process via our understanding of discrete time markov chains. Let  $X_n$  be the discrete process which 'follows the chain when it moves'. The transition probabilities are  $P(n, n+1) = \frac{\lambda_n}{\mu_n + \lambda_n}$ , and  $P(n, n-1) = \frac{\mu_n}{\mu_n + \lambda_n}$ . The discrete process is recurrent if and only if the continuous process is recurrent. Thus we define  $\alpha(x)$  to be the probability of returning to 0 starting at  $x$ . We have

$$(\mu_n + \lambda_n)\alpha(x) = \mu_n\alpha(n-1) + \lambda_n\alpha(n+1)$$

This can be rewritten

$$\alpha(n) - \alpha(n+1) = \frac{\mu_n}{\lambda_n} [\alpha(n-1) - \alpha(n)]$$

By induction,

$$\alpha(n) - \alpha(n+1) = \frac{\mu_n \cdots \mu_1}{\lambda_n \cdots \lambda_1} [\alpha(0) - \alpha(1)]$$

Hence

$$\alpha(n+1) = \alpha(n+1) - \alpha(0) + \alpha(0) = 1 + [\alpha(1) - 1] \sum_{j=0}^n \frac{\mu_j \cdots \mu_1}{\lambda_j \cdots \lambda_1}$$

And thus the chain is transient if and only if

$$\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mu_1 \cdots \mu_j}{\lambda_1 \cdots \lambda_j} < \infty$$

# Chapter 10

## Brownian Motion

Brownian motion is one of fundamental continuous stochastic processes, modeling random continuous motion. It has a rich and beautiful theory. It owes its name to a British botanist who observed the motion in 1827 while studying the motion of pollens in a liquid. The hitting of pollen by smaller molecules in the liquid leads to the pollen going sporadic motion over time. The mathematical properties of this motion were introduced by Einstein in 1905. The main properties of the motion are that

- The motion of the particle has independent increments.
- The motion is continuous.
- The increments are distributed as Gaussian random variables.

More formally, we say a Brownian motion in  $\mathbf{R}^n$  is a  $[0, \infty)$  time stochastic process  $\{B_t\}$  such that the map  $t \mapsto B_t(\omega)$  is continuous for almost all points  $\omega$  in the sample space (in the sense that it has exterior probability one, since this set may not be measurable), and  $B_{t+s} - B_t$  is independent of  $\{B_u : 0 \leq u \leq t\}$  for all  $s \geq 0$ , and  $B_{t+s} - B_t \sim N(0, s \wedge t)$ .

### 10.1 Construction of Brownian Motion

Though Einstein used his physical intuition to determine the mathematical properties of Brownian motion, it was Norbert Wiener that put Brownian motion on a rigorous footing, and gave the first construction giving the



*existence* of Brownian motion. Indeed, just because we describe the properties that Brownian motion *should* have does not tell us that a stochastic process should exist with these properties. The basic idea of Wiener, elegantly simplified over years by mathematicians such as Ciesielski, is to represent Brownian motion as a random Fourier series.

There is another way to construct Brownian motion, which relies on the regularity theory of continuous time martingales, and the construction of Gaussian processes on any index set.

**Lemma 10.1.** *If  $H$  is a real Hilbert space, then there is a probability space  $\Omega$  and a family of random variables  $\{X_x : x \in H\}$  such that the map  $x \mapsto X_x$  is a linear isometry into  $L^2(\Omega)$ , and for each  $x$ ,  $X_x$  is a  $N(0, |x|^2)$  distributed random variable.*

*Proof.* Let  $\{e_\alpha : \alpha \in I\}$  be a basis for  $H$ , and use any of the standard construction theorems to consider a probability space  $\Omega$  upon which there are a family of independent random variables  $\{X_\alpha : \alpha \in I\}$ . The map  $e_\alpha \mapsto X_\alpha$  extends to all of  $H$ , because for any  $x \in H$ ,

$$\sum_{\alpha} \langle x, e_{\alpha} \rangle X_{\alpha}$$

converges in the  $L^2$  norm to a random variable  $X_x$ , because the  $X_\alpha$  are orthonormal in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , and Parseval's equality gives

$$\left\| \sum_{\alpha} \langle x, e_{\alpha} \rangle X_{\alpha} \right\|^2 = \sum_{\alpha} \langle x, e_{\alpha} \rangle^2 < \infty$$

so the series converges absolutely. It is sometimes useful to note that if we are working over a separable Hilbert space, then the sum

$$\sum_{\alpha} \langle x, e_i \rangle X_i$$

converges pointwise almost surely, as a sum of mean zero independent random variables. The calculation

$$\sum \mathbf{E}[\langle x, e_i \rangle^2 X_n^2] = \sum \langle x, e_i \rangle^2 = |x|^2 < \infty$$

proves the almost sure pointwise convergence of the sum as a consequence of Kolmogorov's three-series theorem.  $\square$

Thus every separable Hilbert space is isometric to a subspace of Gaussian random variables on a probability space. If  $A$  is a separable,  $\sigma$  finite measure space with measure  $\mu$ , and  $H = L^2(A)$ , then the map constructed above is known as a **Gaussian measure** on  $A$  with intensity  $\mu$ . The reason this is known as Gaussian measure is that if  $E$  is a measurable subset of  $A$  of finite measure, and  $E = \sum E_n$ , then  $X_E = \sum X_{E_k}$  almost surely and in  $L^2$ , and we can think of  $X_f$  as being an ‘integral’ of  $f$  with respect to this measure. However, the set upon which the sum does not converge depends on  $E$ , and unless we assume additional conditions on  $A$ , there is usually no true random measure  $m(\omega, \cdot)$  with  $X_E = m(\omega, E)$  almost surely. In particular, we can construct a Gaussian measure on  $[0, \infty)$  with the  $\sigma$  algebra of Borel sets and the Lebesgue measure, and we define a process  $B$  by setting  $B_t = X_{[0,t]}$ . Then

- $B$  has independent increments: If  $0 \leq t_1 < s_1 < \dots < t_n < s_n$ , the random variables  $B_{s_i} - B_{t_i} = X_{(t_i, s_i]}$  are independent of one another, because the indicator functions  $\chi_{(t_i, s_i]}$  are orthogonal in  $L^2[0, \infty)$ .
- For each finite  $0 \leq t_1 \leq \dots \leq t_n$ , the random variable  $(B_{t_0}, \dots, B_{t_n})$  is Gaussian distributed, because  $B_{t_i} = X_{[0, t_i]} \sim N(0, t_i)$  is the cartesian product of Gaussian random variables is a Gaussian distribution.

The only problem with this method is that we have no guarantee that the paths of  $B$  are continuous. This requires an application of Kolmogorov’s continuity theorem. Since

$$\mathbf{E}|B_{t+s} - B_t|^4 = 3s^2$$

this means that we can find a continuous version of  $B$ .

## 10.2 Basic Properties

Once Brownian motion in one dimension has been constructed, it is easy to construct many other interesting processes with similar properties to Brownian motion.

**Example.** If  $B$  is a one-dimensional Brownian motion, then we can use it to construct a probability space upon which we have  $n$  independent Brownian motions  $B^1, \dots, B^n$ , and we call the corresponding stochastic process  $(B^1, \dots, B^n)$  an  **$n$  dimensional Brownian motion**.

**Example.** If  $x \in \mathbf{R}$  is a random variable, and  $B_t$  is a Brownian motion, then  $x + B_t$  is known as a **Brownian motion started at  $x$** . We can also consider  $n$  dimensional Brownian motions started at  $x \in \mathbf{R}^n$ .

**Example.** The process  $(t, B)$  is known as the **heat process in  $\mathbf{R}$** . If  $B$  is instead an  $n$  dimensional Brownian motion, we get the heat process in  $\mathbf{R}^n$ .

Brownian motion also has numerous invariance properties under transformations. Let  $B$  be a Brownian motion.

- (Time Homogeneity) For  $s \geq 0$ ,  $B_{t+s} - B_s$  is a Brownian motion independent of  $\sigma(B_u : u \leq s)$ .
- (Symmetry):  $-B_t$  is a Brownian motion.
- (Scaling): For every  $c > 0$ ,  $cB_{t/c^2}$  is a Brownian motion.
- (Time-Inversion)  $tB_{1/t}$  is a Brownian motion, if we define  $0 \cdot B_\infty = 0$ .

these properties are most easily verified by using the fact that Brownian motion is precisely a Gaussian process on  $[0, \infty)$  with mean zero, with covariance  $\langle B_t, B_s \rangle = t \wedge s$ , and with almost sure continuous sample paths. The only tricky part is to verify that  $tB_{1/t} \rightarrow 0$  almost surely as  $t \rightarrow 0$ , and this follows because by continuity of  $B$ ,

$$\mathbf{P} \left( \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} tB_{1/t} = 0 \right) = \mathbf{P} \left( \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \bigcap_{p \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap (0, 1/m]} |pB_{1/p}| < 1/n \right)$$

But  $tB_{1/t}$  has the same finite dimensional distributions as  $B_t$  for  $t > 0$ , so because the set described on the right is a measurable subset of  $\mathbf{R}^{[0, \infty)}$ , we conclude

$$\mathbf{P} \left( \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \bigcap_{p \in \mathbf{Q}^+ \cap (0, 1/m]} |B_p| < 1/n \right) = 1$$

and this gives almost sure continuity. A consequence of this fact is that  $B_t = o(t)$  almost surely.

The fact that  $cB_{t/c^2}$  is a Brownian motion if  $B_t$  is, is one of the most important properties of Brownian motion, for it implies a particular sample of the motion will have a ‘fractal’ quality about it – the behaviour of Brownian motion on  $[0, a] \times [-b, b]$  is the same as the behaviour of the Brownian motion on  $[0, t^2a] \times [-tb, tb]$ .

**Lemma 10.2.** *We have  $\mathbf{P}(\sup B_t = \infty, \inf B_t = -\infty) = 1$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $Z = \sup B_t$ . By Brownian scaling, for any  $c$ ,  $cZ$  is identically distributed to  $Z$ . This means that  $Z$  is concentrated on  $\{0, \infty\}$ , because

$$\mathbf{P}(0 < Z < N) = \mathbf{P}(0 < Z(\varepsilon N)^{-1} < \varepsilon^{-1}) = \mathbf{P}(0 < Z < \varepsilon^{-1})$$

Letting  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  gives  $\mathbf{P}(0 < Z < N) = 0$ , and we can let  $N \rightarrow \infty$  to conclude  $\mathbf{P}(0 < Z < \infty) = 0$ . Now applying independence, we find

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(\sup B_t = 0) &\leq \mathbf{P}(B_1 \leq 0, B_u \leq 0 \text{ for all } u \geq 1) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(B_1 \leq 0, \sup(B_{1+t} - B_1) = 0) \\ &= \frac{\mathbf{P}(\sup(B_{1+t} - B_1) = 0)}{2} = \frac{\mathbf{P}(\sup B_t = 0)}{2} \end{aligned}$$

hence  $\mathbf{P}(\sup B_t = 0) = 0$ , and so  $\sup B_t = \infty$  almost surely. Since  $-B_t$  is a Brownian motion, this gives  $\inf B_t = -\infty$  almost surely.  $\square$

**Corollary 10.3.** *For any  $a \in \mathbf{R}$ ,  $\{t : B_t(\omega) = a\}$  is almost surely not bounded above. Thus every  $a$  is a recurrent state of the stochastic process.*

One reason Brownian motion is nice to study is that it is an example of almost every stochastic process, and in particular it is an example of these stochastic process upon which calculations are feasible. For instance, Brownian motion is a martingale.

**Theorem 10.4.** *A Brownian motion  $B$  is a martingale with respect to the natural filtration  $\Sigma_t = \sigma(B_s : s \leq t)$ , as is  $B_t^2 - t$ .*

*Proof.* Each  $B_t$  is in  $L^1$ , because it is  $N(0, t)$  distributed. We find that

$$\mathbf{E}[X_t | \Sigma_s] = \mathbf{E}[X_t - X_s | \Sigma_s] + \mathbf{E}[X_s | \Sigma_s] = \mathbf{E}[X_t - X_s] + X_s = X_s$$

Furthermore, we find that  $\mathbf{E}[(B_t - B_s)^2 | \Sigma_s] = t - s$ , and also

$$\mathbf{E}[(B_t - B_s)^2 | \Sigma_s] = \mathbf{E}[B_t^2 | \Sigma_s] - 2\mathbf{E}[B_t B_s | \Sigma_s] + \mathbf{E}[B_s^2 | \Sigma_s] = \mathbf{E}[B_t^2 | \Sigma_s] - B_s^2$$

and rearranging this gives the Martingale property for  $B_t^2 - t$ .  $\square$

Once the theory of stochastic integrals is suitably developed, we will be able to prove that Brownian motion is the *only* continuous time martingale with continuous sample paths such that  $B_t^2 - t$  is a martingale. If we define a Brownian motion with respect to a filtration  $\Sigma$  as a  $\Sigma$  adapted Brownian motion such that  $\mathbf{E}[B_t - B_s | \Sigma_s] = 0$ , then  $B$  is a  $\Sigma$  adapted martingale.

### 10.3 Brownian Motion is a Markov Process

Brownian motion is also a continuous time time-homogenous Markov process, because for any bounded Borel measurable  $f$ ,  $\mathbf{E}[f(B_{t+s})|\Sigma_t] = P_s(f)(B_t)$ , where  $P_t$  is the transition semigroup operator  $P_t f = p_t * f$ , and  $p_s(x) = (2\pi s)^{-1/2} \exp(-x^2/2s)$  is the transition density of the Brownian motion, and  $p_0 = \delta$  is the Dirac delta. This is easily verified because

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(a \leq B_{t+s} \leq b | \Sigma_t) &= \mathbf{P}(a - B_t \leq B_{t+s} - B_t \leq b - B_t | \Sigma_t) \\ &= \mathbf{E}[\mathbf{P}(a - B_t \leq B_{t+s} - B_t \leq b - B_t | B_t) | \Sigma_t] \\ &= \mathbf{E} \left[ \int_{a-B_t}^{b-B_t} p_s(y) dy \middle| \Sigma_t \right] \\ &= \mathbf{E} \left[ \int_a^b p_s(B_t + y) dy \middle| \Sigma_t \right] \\ &= \int p_s(B_t + y) \chi_{[a,b]}(y) dy \\ &= (p_s * \chi_{[a,b]})(B_t) \end{aligned}$$

and the general result follows by taking limits of simple functions. The time homogeneity follows because  $p_t * p_s = p_{t+s}$  (easily verified by taking the Fourier transform), so  $P_{t+s} = P_t \circ P_s$ . We can define an infinitesimal generator

$$Af = \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \frac{P_t f - f}{t}$$

and provided  $f \in C_b^2(\mathbf{R})$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \frac{(P_t f)(x) - f(x)}{t} &= \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x+y) - f(x)}{t} \frac{e^{-y^2/2t}}{\sqrt{2\pi t}} dy \\ &= \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x + \sqrt{t}y) - f(x)}{t} \frac{e^{-y^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dy \\ &= \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{t} (y\sqrt{t}f'(x) + (y^2 t/2)f''(x + \theta y\sqrt{t})) \frac{e^{-y^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dy \\ &= \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (y^2/2)f''(x + \theta y\sqrt{t}) \frac{e^{-y^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} dy = f''(x)/2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, on  $C_b^2(\mathbf{R})$ , the infinitesimal generator of the Brownian motion is

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dx^2}$$

This implies that for any  $f \in C_b^2(\mathbf{R})$ , and  $s > 0$ ,

$$\frac{\partial P_t f}{\partial t} = \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{P_{t+s} f - P_t f}{s} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 P_t f}{\partial x^2}$$

Thus  $P_t f$  is a solution to the *heat equation* for any sufficiently regular function  $f$ . Letting  $f$  converge to the Dirac delta function hints at the fact that

$$\frac{\partial p_t}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 p_t}{\partial x^2}$$

We can interpret this as saying the heat equation models the averages of particle behaviour undergoing brownian motion over a time period. This connects the classical study of diffusion in physics with the study of diffusion in probability theory. However, whereas the study of diffusion in physics gives results about the average behaviour of particles over a long period of time, whereas probability theory gives much stronger results of the behaviour of *individual* particles.

# Chapter 11

## Stochastic Calculus

Our goal in this chapter will be to make sense of the integral

$$(H \bullet X)_t = \int_0^t H_s dX_s$$

where  $H$ ,  $X$ , and  $H \bullet X$  will all be continuous time stochastic processes. This equation can also be written in the ‘differential form’  $d(H \bullet X) = H dX$ . The most well known integral of this form is known as the Itô integral, after its creator, and generalizes the martingale  $(C \bullet M)$  we studied in the discrete time setting, which represented the overall profit of a series of bets, where the stakes can be adjusted given information available directly before the bet is placed. In the discrete case,  $C$  was a previsible process, and  $M$  was a martingale, a submartingale, or a supermartingale. In the continuous time case,  $H$  will also be a previsible process, in the sense that we can determine the values of  $H$  given knowledge known ‘infinitesimally before’ each time step, and  $X$  will be a semimartingale, which includes the class of continuous time, submartingales, martingales, and supermartingales. It models a totalling of a series of infinitesimal bets made against the given stakes  $X$ . Like for the Lebesgue integral, we shall build up the Itô integral for the simplest class of integrands, and then construct the general integral by taking the appropriate limits.

Given two stopping times  $S \leq T$ , and a bounded,  $\Sigma_S$  measurable function  $Z$ , we will begin by constructing the integral of the function

$$Z(S, T](t, \omega) = Z(\omega) \chi_{(S(\omega), T(\omega)]}(t)$$

For a fixed  $\omega$ ,  $Z$  is constant between any two stopping times, which represents a strategy which bets a constant amount between times  $S$  and  $T$ , and so it makes sense to make the ‘obvious definition’

$$\int_0^t Z(S, T] dX = Z(X_{T \wedge t} - X_{S \wedge t})$$

for any given integrator  $X$ . The reason that we insist  $S$  and  $T$  are stopping times, and that  $Z$  is bounded and  $\Sigma_S$  measurable implies the following result.

**Lemma 11.1.** *If  $M$  is a uniformly integrable càdlàg martingale, then  $Z(S, T] \bullet M$  is a uniformly integrable martingale.*

*Proof.* TODO □

Essentially, stochastic integration theory consists of trying to extend this result to as general a class of functions as we can get, by exploiting the properties of continuous time martingales to their fullest extent.

## 11.1 Previsibility

Recall that in the discrete setting, we defined a betting scheme  $C$  as a random variable adapted to one time step before the values of the bet are revealed. In continuous time, a process should therefore be previsible if it can be predicted ‘infinitesimally’ into the past. A left continuous process is the perfect candidate for a process of this form, because we can take limits on the left to approximate the next bet ‘immediately’ before the bet is revealed. The right definition makes sure that we have a suitable algebra of previsible processes. The **previsible  $\sigma$  algebra** on  $(0, \infty) \times \Omega$  generated by  $\Sigma$  is defined to be the smallest  $\sigma$  algebra on  $(0, \infty) \times \Omega$  such that every adapted càglàd process is measurable. A process on  $(0, \infty)$  is called **previsible** if it is measurable as a map from  $(0, \infty) \times \Omega$  to  $\mathbf{R}$ .

**Lemma 11.2.** *If  $S \leq T$  are stopping times, and  $Z$  is a bounded  $\Sigma_S$  measurable functions, then  $Z(S, T]$  is a previsible process.*

*Proof.* The process  $Z(S, T]$  is certainly càglàd, so we need only verify that it is adapted to  $\Sigma$ . But now  $Z(S, T] = \lim Z[S_n, T_n)$ , where  $S_n = S + n^{-1}$  and



$T_n = T + n^{-1}$ , and since  $Z \in \Sigma_{S_n}$  because  $S \leq S_n$ , it suffices to prove that  $Z[S_n, T_n)$  is adapted, and this follows because

$$\{Z[S_n, T_n)_t \in E\} = \{Z \in E\} \cap \{S_n \leq t\} \cap \{T_n > t\}$$

and  $\{Z \in E\} \cap \{S_n \leq t\}$  is in  $\Sigma_t$ , and  $\{T > t\}$  is  $\Sigma_t$  measurable.  $\square$

We call any finite sum of processes of the form  $Z(S, T]$  a *bounded elementary integrand*, a class often denoted by  $b\mathcal{E}$ . It is rather messy to show (combinatorially reordering the finite sums by taking mins and maxes) that any bounded elementary integrand  $H$  may be written in the ‘increasing form’  $Z_1(S_1, T_1] + \cdots + Z_n(S_n, T_n]$  where  $S_1 \leq T_1 \leq \cdots \leq S_n \leq T_n$ , and  $Z_i \in b\Sigma_{S_i}$ . Once we have written the theorem in this form, we can unambiguously define the integral

$$\int_0^t H dX = \sum_{k=1}^n Z_k[X_{T_k \wedge t} - X_{S_k \wedge t}]$$

The monotone class theorem will come in handy in extending this integral, and one fact that makes this easy is the following.

**Lemma 11.3.** *The smallest  $\sigma$  algebra containing all bounded element functions is equal to the previsible  $\sigma$  algebra.*

*Proof.* It is obvious that each element of  $b\mathcal{E}$  is previsible, so it remains to show every bounded càglàd adapted process  $X$  is  $\sigma(b\mathcal{E})$  measurable, and this follows because

$$X = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{i=2}^{nk} X_{\frac{i-1}{n}} \left( \frac{i-1}{n}, \frac{i}{n} \right]$$

and if  $X$  is also adapted, then  $X_{(i-1)n^{-1}} \in b\Sigma_{(i-1)n^{-1}}$ .  $\square$

We immediately infer the following monotone class theorem, which enables us to show that the Itô integral is defined for all previsible processes.

**Lemma 11.4.** *If  $V$  is a vector space of bounded processes with parameter set  $(0, \infty)$ , and*

- *Constant functions are in  $V$ .*

- If  $H_n$  is a sequence of elements in  $V$  which converge uniformly on  $(0, \infty) \times \Omega$  to a function  $H$ , then  $H$  is in  $V$ .
- If  $H_n$  is a uniformly bounded sequence of nonnegative elements of  $V$  and  $H_n \uparrow H$ , then  $H$  is in  $V$ .
- $V$  contains every bounded elementary function.

Then  $V$  contains every bounded previsible process.

By linearity,  $H \bullet X$  is also a uniformly integrable martingale.

## 11.2 Finite Variation Processes

A **finite variation process** null at zero is an adapted càdlàg process  $X$  such that each path  $t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is of finite variation, and  $X_0 = 0$ . Thus for each  $t$  and  $\omega$ , the variation

$$V_X(t, \omega) = \int_{(0,t]} |dX_s(\omega)| = \sup \sum_{k=1}^n |X_{s_k}(\omega) - X_{s_{k-1}}(\omega)|$$

is finite, where the supremum is taken over all partitions  $0 = s_0 < s_1 < \dots < s_n = 1$ . We write  $FV_0$  for the space of finite variation processes null at 0. In this case, if  $H$  is a bounded  $B(0, \infty) \times \Sigma$  measurable process, then we can easily define

$$\left( \int_0^t H dX \right) (\omega) = \int_0^t H(s, \omega) dX_s(\omega)$$

as the normal Lebesgue Stieltjes integral. An  $IV_0$  process will be a  $FV_0$  process  $X$  such that  $\|X\|_V = \mathbf{E}V_X(\infty, \omega) < \infty$ .

**Theorem 11.5.** *If  $H$  is a bounded, previsible process, and  $M$  is a martingale in  $IV_0$ , then  $H \bullet M$  is a martingale in  $IV_0$ .*

*Proof.* TODO

□

### 11.3 Localization

The boundedness and integrality assumptions we used to conclude on the regularity of the integrals of finite variation processes is too stringent to be practical. To obtain a more useful result, we must relax the hypothesis of that theorem to a ‘localize’ version. Of course, then conclusion of the theorem then only holds locally, in some sense.

Consider reducing a global equation  $d(H \bullet X) = HdX$  on  $(0, \infty)$  to the ‘local’ equation, that  $d(H \bullet X) = HdX$  on  $(0, T]$ , where  $T$  is a stopping time (which we can view as ‘local time’). With this idea, given a stopping time  $T$  and a process  $H$  on  $(0, \infty)$ , it is natural to introduce the process  $H(0, T]_t = \chi_{(0, T]}(t)H_t$  which represents the adjustment to the bet  $H$  where we immediately stop betting at time  $T$ . Note that if  $H$  is previsible, then so is  $H(0, T]$ . Similarly, if  $X$  is a process on  $[0, \infty)$ , it is natural to introduce the process  $X^T$  such that,

$$X^T(t, \omega) = \begin{cases} X(t, \omega) & : 0 \leq t \leq T(\omega) \\ X(T(\omega), \omega) & : t > T(\omega) \end{cases}$$

which formally means that

$$dX^T(t, \omega) = \begin{cases} dX(t, \omega) & : 0 \leq t \leq T(\omega) \\ 0 & : t > T(\omega) \end{cases}$$

so that we ‘close off all bets’ at time  $T$ . We can now define localization as saying that the equation

$$(H \bullet X)^T = H(0, T] \bullet X^T$$

holds for stopping time  $T$ . Note that now we are forced to view  $X$  as a process, rather than just a ‘measure’  $dX$ .

Let us begin by defining how we localize integrands. Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be a family of previsible process with the property that if  $H \in \mathcal{L}$ , then  $H(0, T]$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$  for every stopping time  $T$ . We say a process  $H$  on  $(0, \infty)$  is in the localization  $l\mathcal{L}$  of the vector space if there exists a sequence of stopping times  $T_1 \leq T_2 \leq \dots$  with  $T_i \uparrow \infty$  such that  $H(0, T_n] \in \mathcal{L}$  (we say the  $T_i$  ‘reduces’  $H$  into  $\mathcal{L}$ ). Then  $l\mathcal{L}$  is a space stable under the localization  $H \mapsto H(0, T]$ . If  $\mathcal{L}$  is the space of all bounded, previsible processes, then  $l\mathcal{L}$  is called the space of all *locally bounded previsible processes*.

**Lemma 11.6.** *If  $H$  is an adapted cáglád process with  $\limsup_{t \downarrow 0} |H_t| < \infty$ , then  $H$  is a locally bounded previsible process.*

*Proof.* Let  $T_n = \inf\{t : |H_t| > n\}$ . Then  $H(0, T_n]$  is cáglád and bounded, hence bounded and previsible.  $\square$

On the other hand, we now define the localization of integrators. Let  $\mathcal{L}_0$  be a family of adapted, cádlág processes null at zero, such that if  $X \in \mathcal{L}_0$ , then  $X^T \in \mathcal{L}_0$  for any stopping time  $T$ , and we then say  $\mathcal{L}_0$  is stable under stopping. A process is in  $\mathcal{L}_{0,\text{loc}}$  if there exists a sequence of stopping times  $T_1 \leq T_2 \leq \dots$  with  $T_n \rightarrow \infty$  such that for all  $n$ ,  $X^{T_n} \in \mathcal{L}_0$ . As with integrands, we say the  $T_i$  are a reducing sequence for  $X$ .

**Example.** We let  $\mathcal{M}_0$  denote the class of all martingales null at zero,  $\text{UIM}_0$  the class of uniformly integrable martingales null at zero,  $\text{FVM}_0$  the space of all finite variation martingales null at zero, and  $\text{IVM}_0$  the space of all integrable variation martingales null at zero. Each of these spaces are stable under stopping, and give us the corresponding spaces of **local martingales**.

## Chapter 12

### Appendix: Conditional Expectations

Most of the theory of random processes is connected with understanding how certain values of a process influence the process later on in time. When studying Markov chains, we tried to understand the relationship by directly considering the processes' transition coefficients. In the theory of martingales, we instead study random processes by looking at how the evolution of a stochastic process changes if we fix states to certain time points. The primary tools in our analysis will be **conditional probabilities** and **conditional expectations**, which allow us to quantify how the distribution of a random variable changes when we fix the value of another random variable. We find that the elementary definition of conditional expectations introduced in elementary probability theory breaks down when we begin to look at more general classes of random variables, and we introduce Kolmogorov's general definition of a conditional expectation with respect to a  $\sigma$  algebra to compensate.

**Example.** Consider the Polya urn process. We start with one white ball and one black ball in an urn. At each time epoch, we draw a random ball from the urn, and put the ball back in addition to another ball of the same colour. Let  $X_k$  be the number of white balls after drawing  $k$  balls, and let  $M_n = X_n/(n+2)$  be the relative proportion of white balls in the urn at a certain time. We can then calculate

$$\mathbf{E}(M_n|M_{n-1}) = \frac{\mathbf{E}(X_n|X_{n-1})}{n+2} = \frac{1}{n+2} \left[ X_{n-1} + \frac{X_{n-1}}{n+1} \right] = \frac{X_{n-1}}{n+1} = M_{n-1}$$

This is the equation which we will see defines a martingale. Now we can calculate inductively that  $\mathbf{P}(X_n = k) = (n+1)^{-1}$  for all  $1 \leq k \leq n+1$ , as  $\mathbf{P}(X_0 = 1) = 1$ , and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P}(X_n = k) &= \sum_{m=1}^n \mathbf{P}(X_{n-1} = m) \mathbf{P}(X_n = k | X_{n-1} = m) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(X_{n-1} = k-1) \mathbf{P}(X_n = k | X_{n-1} = k-1) \\ &\quad + \mathbf{P}(X_{n-1} = k) \mathbf{P}(X_n = k | X_{n-1} = k) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \frac{k-1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n} \frac{n+1-k}{n+1} = \frac{1}{n+1}\end{aligned}$$

This means that  $M_n = (n+2)^{-1} X_n$  converges in distribution to a uniform distribution over  $[0, 1]$ . On the other hand, suppose we start off with two white balls in the urn, and one black ball. Then we find  $M_n = X_n/(n+3)$  still satisfies the martingale equation, but we find that for  $2 \leq k \leq n+2$ ,

$$\mathbf{P}(X_n = k) = \frac{2(k-1)}{n(n+1)}$$

which in a sense says that  $X_n$  is much more likely to be bigger than smaller. As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $M_n$  becomes much more concentrated at large values of  $[0, 1]$ . In fact, one can calculate that  $M_n$  converges in distribution to a  $\beta$  distribution with parameters  $\alpha = 2$  and  $\beta = 1$ . Thus changing the initial values of the process slightly caused an entirely different evolution of the process.

## 12.1 Classical Conditioning

Recall that for discrete random variables  $X$  and  $Y$ , we can calculate conditional probabilities and expectations by

$$\mathbf{P}(Y = y | X = x) = \frac{\mathbf{P}(Y = y, X = x)}{\mathbf{P}(X = x)}$$

$$\mathbf{E}(Y | X = x) = \sum_y y \mathbf{P}(Y = y | X = x)$$

defined whenever  $\mathbf{P}(X = x) \neq 0$ . For continuous random variables, we can consider the joint densities  $f_{X,Y}$ , along with the individual densities  $f_X$  and

$f_Y$ , and then define

$$\mathbf{P}(Y \in A|X = x) = \int_A \frac{f_{Y,X}(y, x)}{f_X(x)} dy$$

$$\mathbf{E}(Y|X = x) = \int y \frac{f_{Y,X}(y, x)}{f_X(x)} dy$$

defined where  $f_X(x) \neq 0$ . However, these two classical formulations are insufficient to cover conditional expectations for the general random variables we encounter in the study of stochastic processes. Kolmogorov, one of the founders of measure theoretic probability theory, found the most elegant way to define  $\mathbf{P}(Y \in A|X = x)$  and  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X = x)$  which works for almost every random variable we encounter in practice, and also leads to the most elegant definitions in the theory of martingales.

## 12.2 Kolmogorov's Realization

Kolmogorov realized we can think of conditional values as ‘best guesses’ of the values of a random variable given some known information about the system. Our first revelation is to think of  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X)$  as a random variable on the same sample space as  $X$  and  $Y$ , taking value  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X = X(\omega))$  on input  $\omega \in \Omega$ . In both classical definitions, the conditional expectation possesses two important properties:

- $\mathbf{E}(Y|X)$  is a function of the random variable  $X$ . That is, we only need to know  $X(\omega)$  to predict the value  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X)(\omega)$ .
- For any subset of the sample space of the form  $B = X^{-1}(A)$ , we have the equations

$$\sum_{a \in A} \mathbf{P}(X = a) \mathbf{E}(Y|X = a) = \sum_{a \in A} \sum_y y \mathbf{P}(X = a, Y = y)$$

$$\int_A f_X(x) \mathbf{E}(Y|X = x) dx = \int_A \int y f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx dy$$

where  $A \subset \mathbf{R}$  is a set of real values, which have a common measure-theoretic equation

$$\int_B \mathbf{E}(Y|X) d\mathbf{P} = \int_B Y d\mathbf{P}$$

Note, in particular, that the equation for discrete random variables uniquely defines the conditional expectation whenever  $\mathbf{P}(X = a) \neq 0$  by taking  $A = \{a\}$ . In the case of continuous random variables, we can only conclude that  $f_Y(y)\mathbf{E}(Y|X = x) = \int y f_{X,Y}(x, y) dy$  holds almost everywhere, and this defines  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X = x)$  up to a set of measure zero, if we ignore the values  $y$  where  $f_Y(y) = 0$ . In particular, if we can choose  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X = x)$  to be a continuous function of  $x$ , then it is the unique continuous function satisfying the integral equation.

In general, for *any* two random variables  $X$  and  $Y$ , we say a random variable  $Z = f(X)$  is a *version* of  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X)$  if the two conditions above are satisfied for  $Z$ . That is, if  $Z$  can be expressed as a function of  $X$  (the function  $f$  in the definition), and if for any set  $B = X^{-1}(A)$ ,

$$\int_B Z d\mathbf{P} = \int_B X d\mathbf{P}$$

This can also be expressed as saying

$$\int_A f(x) d\mathbf{P}_X(x) = \int_A f(x) d\mathbf{P}_X(x)$$

However, the definition can certainly be simplified by noting that once we consider  $\mathbf{E}(X|Y)$  as a function on  $\Omega$ , rather than as a function of the values of  $Y$ , the actual values of  $Y$  are not actually important to the definition of conditional expectation, but rather the ways the values spread out over the sample space. If we consider the  $\sigma$  algebra  $\sigma(X)$ , then if we know the value of  $\chi_E$  for each  $E = X^{-1}(F)$ , this should be sufficient knowledge to calculate the expectation  $\mathbf{E}(Y|X)$ , rather than knowing the actual values of  $X$ . The Doob-Dynkin lemma guarantees that if  $X$  and  $Y$  are real-valued, then  $Y$  is a function of  $X$  if and only if  $Y$  is  $\sigma(X)$  measurable. This means the first property of conditional expectation can be reduced to a statement about  $\sigma$  algebras.

**Lemma 12.1** (Doob-Dynkin). *A real-valued random variable  $Y$  is  $\sigma(X)$  measurable if and only if  $Y = f(X)$  for some Borel-measurable  $f : \mathbf{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ .*

*Proof.* If  $Y = \sum a_i \chi_{A_i}$  is a simple function, then  $Y$  is  $\sigma(X)$  measurable if and only if  $A_i = X^{-1}(B_i)$  for some Borel measurable sets  $B_i$ . In this case, the  $B_i$  are disjoint, and we can define a simple Borel measurable function  $f = \sum a_i \chi_{B_i}$ , and we find  $Y = f(X)$ . If  $Y$  is a general non-negative



$\sigma(X)$  random variable, we can consider an increasing sequence  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$  of non-negative simple  $\sigma(X)$  random variables converging monotonely to  $Y$ . Applying the previous result, we can write  $Y_i = f_i(X)$  for some Borel measurable functions  $f_i$ . If we consider any sample point  $\omega$ , then

$$Y(\omega) = \lim Y_i(\omega) = \lim f_i(X(\omega))$$

Thus if we set  $E$  to be the subset of points  $x$  in  $\mathbf{R}$  where  $f_i(x)$  converges, then  $X(\Omega) \subset E$ . Since the set  $E$  is Borel measurable, the functions  $\chi_E f_i$  are Borel measurable, and converge everywhere to a Borel measurable function  $f$ , and it is easy to verify that  $Y = f(X)$ .  $\square$

The intuitive way we should think about the conditional values is as a ‘best guess’ of the probability values given that some information is known about the system at some time. If we think of the information about the random variable  $X$  being given by the  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\sigma(X)$ , then it isn’t too much to model arbitrary ‘sets of information’ about a probability space by a sub  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\Sigma$  of the  $\sigma$ -algebra defining the space. In this case, we should interpret  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  as giving a best guess of the value of  $X$ , given that we know the value of all  $\Sigma$  measurable functions ahead of time. We say a random variable  $X$  is **adapted** to a  $\sigma$ -algebra  $\Sigma$  if  $X$  is measurable with respect to  $\Sigma$ . This means, essentially, that we ‘know’ the value of  $X$  if we know the information contained in  $\Sigma$ .

## 12.3 General Conditional Expectations

With all this terminology set in stone, we can now formulate Kolmogorov’s theory of conditional expectations. For a given  $\Sigma$  algebra, and a random variable  $X$ , a random variable  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  is a *version* of a **conditional expectation** with respect to  $\Sigma$  if it is adapted to  $\Sigma$ , and if

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) = \int_S X$$

for any  $S \in \Sigma$ . In a sense,  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  is the best approximation to  $X$ , given that we know the information in  $\Sigma$ .

**Example.** The  $\sigma$  algebra  $\Sigma = \{\emptyset, \Omega\}$  is the smallest  $\sigma$  algebra over  $\Omega$ , and represents a set of ‘no information at all’. If  $X$  is any integrable random variable, then the constant function  $\mathbf{E}(X)$  is a version of a conditional expectation for  $X$ , because

$$\int_{\emptyset} \mathbf{E}(X) = 0 = \int_{\emptyset} X \quad \int_{\Omega} \mathbf{E}(X) = \mathbf{E}(X) = \int_{\Omega} X$$

Thus, given the presense of no information at all, the best constant approximation we can have of  $X$  is  $\mathbf{E}(X)$ .

Despite the technical definition, the existence and almost-sure uniqueness of conditional expectations is relatively easy to prove in  $\mathcal{L}^1(\Omega)$ , thanks to the Radon-Nikodym theorem in measure theory.

**Theorem 12.2.** If  $X \in \mathcal{L}^1(\Omega)$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  exists in  $\mathcal{L}^1(\Sigma)$ , and is unique up to a set of measure zero.

*Proof.* First, assume  $X \geq 0$ . Then the map  $\mathbf{P}_{\Sigma} : S \mapsto \int_S X d\mathbf{P}$  is a finite measure over  $\Sigma$  which is absolutely continuous with respect to  $\mathbf{P}$ . The Radon-Nikodym theorem asserts that there is a  $\Sigma$ -adapted random variable  $Y$  such that for any set  $S$ ,

$$\int_S Y d\mathbf{P}_{\Sigma} = \int_S X d\mathbf{P}$$

This shows exactly that  $Y$  is a conditional expectation for  $X$ . It is easy to see that since  $X \geq 0$ ,  $Y \geq 0$  almost surely, and so

$$\|Y\|_1 = \int |Y| d\mathbf{P} = \int Y d\mathbf{P} = \int X d\mathbf{P} = \|X\|_1 < \infty$$

To verify uniqueness, note that if  $Y_0$  and  $Y_1$  are both conditional expectations for  $X$ , then for any set  $S \in \Sigma$ ,  $\int_S (Y_0 - Y_1) = \int_S (X - X) = 0$ , and this implies  $Y_0 = Y_1$  almost surely. If  $X$  is not necessarily positive, then we can write  $X = X^+ - X^-$ , and it is simple to verify that  $\mathbf{E}(X^+|\Sigma) - \mathbf{E}(X^-|\Sigma)$  is a conditional expectation for  $X$ .  $\square$

It is also easy to show that  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  exists if  $X \geq 0$ , because we can write  $X$  as the monotone limit of simple functions  $X_n$ , which are in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and then we can apply the monotone convergence theorem to verify that the pointwise limit of the  $\mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)$  satisfy the required integral formulas. To

verify uniqueness, we note that if  $Y$  and  $Z$  are versions of the conditional expectation of  $X$ , then we can apply the subtraction trick to conclude that  $\mathbf{P}(Y \neq Z, Y < \infty) = 0$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(Y \neq Z, Z < \infty) = 0$ . But now the only set remaining to analyze is where  $Y = Z = \infty$ , and of course  $\mathbf{P}(Y \neq Z, Y = Z = \infty) = 0$ , so  $Y$  and  $Z$  are equal almost everywhere.

## 12.4 Properties of the Conditioning Operator

Let  $\Delta$  denote the overlying  $\sigma$  algebra of our probability space. Since  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  is unique up to a set of measure zero, the many to one map from  $\mathcal{L}^1(\Omega, \Delta)$  to  $\mathcal{L}^1(\Omega, \Sigma)$  descends to an *operator* from  $L^1(\Omega, \Delta)$  to  $L^1(\Omega, \Sigma)$ . It is easy to verify from properties of the Lebesgue integral that

- $\mathbf{E}(aX + bY|\Sigma) = a\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) + b\mathbf{E}(Y|\Sigma)$
- $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)) = \mathbf{E}(X)$ , and if  $\Gamma \subset \Sigma$ ,  $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)|\Gamma) = \mathbf{E}(X|\Gamma)$ .

We also get variants of standard convergence results of Lebesgue theory.

- (Monotone Convergence) If  $0 \leq X_1 \leq X_2 \leq \dots \rightarrow X$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(X_i|\Sigma)$  converges almost surely to  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$ .
- (Fatou) If  $X_n \geq 0$  then  $\mathbf{E}((\liminf X_n)|\Sigma) \leq \liminf \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)$  almost surely.
- (Dominated Convergence) If  $|X_n| \leq Y$ ,  $\int Y < \infty$ , and  $X_n \rightarrow X$  pointwise almost surely, then  $\mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \rightarrow \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  pointwise almost surely.
- (Jensen) If  $f$  is a convex function with  $\|f(X)\|_1 < \infty$ , then we can consider the function  $\mathbf{E}(f(X)|\Sigma)$ , and  $f(\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)) \leq \mathbf{E}(f(X)|\Sigma)$  almost surely.

The general idea is that the integral equations defining conditional expectation can be manipulated using the standard theorems of Lebesgue integrals.

*Proof.* To prove the monotone convergence theorem, note that it is obvious that  $\mathbf{E}(X_i|\Sigma)$  are increasing and non-negative almost everywhere, and therefore we can apply monotone convergence to conclude that for each set  $S$ ,

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) = \int_S X = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_S X_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_S \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)$$

If we let  $T = \{\omega : \limsup \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)(\omega) \leq \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)(\omega) - \varepsilon\}$ , then the reverse Fatou lemma gives

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_T \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \leq \int_T \limsup \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \leq \int_T \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) - \varepsilon = \int_T \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) - \mathbf{P}(T)\varepsilon$$

It follows that  $\mathbf{P}(T) = 0$ , and letting  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  shows that  $\limsup \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \geq \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  almost surely. Similar results show that  $\liminf \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \leq \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  almost surely, so that  $\mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \rightarrow \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  almost surely. Now let's prove Fatou's theorem. If we set  $Y_n = \inf_{k \geq n} X_k$ , then  $Y_n$  tends monotonically to  $\liminf X_n$ , so

$$\mathbf{E}(\liminf X_n|\Sigma) = \lim \mathbf{E}(Y_n|\Sigma)$$

and it suffices to show that  $\lim \mathbf{E}(Y_n|\Sigma) \leq \liminf \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)$  almost surely. But this follows because  $Y_n \leq X_n$ , so  $\mathbf{E}(Y_n|\Sigma) \leq \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma)$ , and we may then take limits, and liminfs. Verifying dominated convergence is easy. If  $S \in \Sigma$  is given, then using the dominated convergence theorem gives

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) = \int_S X_n \rightarrow \int_S X = \int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$$

using the same techniques as in the theorems above, we can conclude that  $\mathbf{E}(X_n|\Sigma) \rightarrow \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  almost surely. To verify Jensen's inequality, we can apply the standard Jensen's inequality to conclude

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(f(X)|\Sigma) = \int_S f(X) \geq f\left(\int_S X\right) = f\left(\int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)\right)$$

and this implies the almost sure inequality.  $\square$

Here is a notable use of the conditional Jensen's inequality.

**Proposition 12.3.** *If  $X \in L^p(\Omega)$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) \in L^p(\Omega)$ .*

*Proof.* Applying Jensen's inequality, using the fact that  $x \mapsto |x|^p$  is convex, and  $\mathbf{E}(|X|^p) < \infty$ , we conclude that  $|\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)|^p \leq \mathbf{E}(|X|^p|\Sigma)$ , and so

$$\|\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)\|_p^p = \int |\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)|^p \leq \int \mathbf{E}(|X|^p|\Sigma) = \int |X|^p = \|X\|_p^p < \infty$$

Thus conditional expectation is a contraction on each  $L^p$  space.  $\square$

Since  $L^1(\Omega, \Sigma)$  embeds in  $L^1(\Omega, \Delta)$ , we can consider the conditional expectation as an operator from  $L^1(\Omega)$  to itself, except for one important point: just because two functions agree almost everywhere with respect to  $\Delta$ , this does not imply they either are both measurable with respect to  $\Sigma$  or both not measurable, because  $\Sigma$  does not necessarily contain all the null sets in  $\Sigma$ . Thus if we consider the conditional operator on  $L^1(\Omega)$ , then we can only conclude that the equivalence class of  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  contains  $\Sigma$  measurable versions of the conditional expectation.

The conditional expectation of  $L^2$  measurable functions has important orthogonality properties, which show  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  is the best  $\Sigma$  adapted approximation of  $X$  in the square mean error, which explains why conditional expectations occur so often in statistical applications.

**Theorem 12.4.** *If  $X \in L^2(\Omega)$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  is the orthogonal projection of  $X$  onto the subspace of  $\Sigma$  adapted  $L^2$  functions.*

*Proof.* If we let  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  be the orthogonal projection of  $X$  onto the subspace of  $L^2$  functions which are  $\Sigma$  measurable, then orthogonality implies that for any  $\Sigma$  measurable function  $Y$ ,

$$\int Y[\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) - X] = 0$$

which can be rewritten as

$$\int Y\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) = \int YX$$

Letting  $Y$  be an indicator function over some element of  $\Sigma$ , we obtain easily that  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  satisfies the properties of a conditional expectation, hence we have proven that the conditional expectation is square integrable.  $\square$

If  $X$  is already  $\Sigma$  measurable, then it is obviously true that  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) = X$ . In particular,  $\mathbf{E}(X|X) = X$ . More generally, we find that if  $X$  is  $\Sigma$  measurable, and in  $L^p(\Omega)$ , for  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ , and if  $Y$  is  $\Sigma$  measurable, and in  $L^q(\Omega)$ , then  $XY$  is in  $L^1$ , and  $\mathbf{E}(XY|\Sigma) = X\mathbf{E}(Y|\Sigma)$ . This follows from the next lemma.

**Lemma 12.5.** *If  $X$  is in  $L^p(\Omega)$ , and  $Y$  is in  $L^q(\Omega)$ , then for any set  $S \in \Sigma$ ,*

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)Y = \int_S XY$$

*Similarly, if  $X \geq 0$  and  $Y \geq 0$  then the formula holds.*

*Proof.* Assume first that  $X \geq 0$ , from which the general theorem will follow by taking  $X = X^+ - X^-$ . As we noted, if  $Y$  is the indicator function of some element of  $\Sigma$ , the theorem is obvious by definition of conditional expectation. Applying linearity of the equation, this means that the equation holds if  $Y$  is any simple function. If  $Y \geq 0$  is the limit of simple functions  $Y_1 \leq Y_2 \leq \dots$ , monotone convergence implies

$$\int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)Y = \lim \int_S \mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)Y_i = \lim \int_S XY_i = \int_S XY$$

and this proves the theorem. The proof for general positive random variables follows from monotone convergence.  $\square$

## 12.5 Conditional Probabilities

We have only been discussing conditional expectation so far, but generalizing the formula  $\mathbf{P}(E) = \mathbf{E}(\chi_E)$  tells us we should be able to define

$$\mathbf{P}(E|\Sigma) = \mathbf{E}(\chi_E|\Sigma)$$

This means that  $\mathbf{P}(E|\Sigma)$  is no longer a number, it is a random variable, like a number that can look ‘ahead of time’ into the information contained in  $\Sigma$  to randomly improve upon our approximation of the probability of an event happening. If  $E_1, E_2, \dots$  are a countable sequence of disjoint events with union  $E$ , then  $\chi_E = \sum \chi_{E_i}$ , and applying monotone convergence we conclude that  $\mathbf{P}(E|\Sigma) = \sum \mathbf{P}(E_i|\Sigma)$  almost everywhere. Thus in some sense, conditional probabilities follow the same rules as regular probabilities. However, if we consider the class of all measurable  $E$ , then we obtain a family of uncountable sets, and it doesn’t seem quite as likely that the conditional expectations of indicators functions will always behave like probability distributions. We define a **regular conditional probability** for a distribution  $\mathbf{P}$  on an algebra  $\Sigma$ , with respect to a  $\sigma$  algebra  $\Delta$  as a map  $\mathbf{P}(\cdot|\Delta) : \Sigma \times \Omega \rightarrow [0, 1]$  such that for ever  $E \in \Sigma$ , the map  $\omega \mapsto \mathbf{P}(E|\Delta)(\omega)$  is a version of  $\mathbf{P}(E|\Delta)$ , and for each  $\omega$ , the map  $E \mapsto \mathbf{P}(E|\Delta)(\omega)$  is a probability measure on  $\Sigma$ .

**Example.** If  $X$  and  $Y$  are continuous random variables, then the density function  $f_{X|Y} = f_{X,Y}/f_Y$  is the density for a regular conditional probability, because

for any Borel set  $B \subset \mathbf{R}$ , the function

$$\omega \mapsto \int_B f_{X|Z}(x|Z = Z(\omega))dx$$

is a version of  $\mathbf{P}(X \in B|Z)$ , and it is easy to see that this defines a probability distribution if  $\omega$  is fixed.

**Example.** Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be independent continuous random variables with a common distribution function  $F$ . Let's calculate  $\mathbf{P}(X \leq t|Z)$ , where  $Z = \max(X, Y)$ . If  $Z \leq t$ , then  $X \leq t$  is guaranteed. On the other hand, if  $Z > t$ , then it is first necessary that  $Y = Z$ , which happens independently of  $Z$  with probability  $1/2$ , and then we try to determine the chance that  $X \leq t$ , given that  $X \leq Z$ . This heuristically justifies that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P}(X \leq t|Z) &= \mathbf{I}(Z \leq t) + \mathbf{I}(Z > t) \frac{\mathbf{P}(X \leq t|X \leq Z)}{2} \\ &= \mathbf{I}(Z \leq t) + \mathbf{I}(Z > t) \frac{\mathbf{P}(X \leq t)}{2\mathbf{P}(X \leq Z)} \\ &= \mathbf{I}(Z \leq t) + \mathbf{I}(Z > t) \frac{F(t)}{2F(Z)} \end{aligned}$$

Lets verify this is formally a conditional expectation. It suffices to integrate this function over  $Z \leq u$ , where  $u \leq \infty$ , since this is a  $\pi$  system, and in this case we need to verify that

$$\mathbf{P}(Z \leq \min(t, u)) + \frac{F(t)}{2} \int_{t < Z \leq u} \frac{d\mathbf{P}}{F(Z)} = \mathbf{P}(X \leq t, Z \leq u)$$

If  $u \leq t$ , we reasoned above that  $\mathbf{P}(X \leq t, Z \leq u) = \mathbf{P}(Z \leq u)$ . On the other hand, since the distribution of  $(X, Y)$  is a product measure, since  $X$  and  $Y$  are independant, we can apply Fubini's theorem, calculating

$$\int_{t < Z \leq u} \frac{d\mathbf{P}}{F(Z)} = \int_{\substack{x \leq y \\ t < y \leq u}} \frac{dF(x)dF(y)}{F(y)} + \int_{\substack{x > y \\ t < x \leq u}} \frac{dF(y)dF(x)}{F(x)} = 2[F(u) - F(t)]$$

$$\mathbf{P}(X \leq t, Z \leq u) = \mathbf{P}(X \leq t, Y \leq u) = F(t)F(u)$$

$$\mathbf{P}(Z \leq t) = \mathbf{P}(X \leq t, Y \leq t) = F(t)^2$$

and the verification is complete. Note that the specification we have given induces a regular conditional probability distribution, because if  $\omega$  is fixed, then  $Z(\omega) = z$  is fixed, then provided  $F(z) \neq 0$ , the values

$$\mathbf{P}(X \leq t | Z = z) = \mathbf{I}(z \leq t) + \mathbf{I}(z > t) \frac{F(t)}{2F(z)}$$

define a right continuous function, non-decreasing of  $t$  whose value at  $-\infty$  is  $F(-\infty)/2F(z) = 0$ , and whose value at  $\infty$  is 1. Since  $\mathbf{P}(F(Z) = 0)$  occurs with probability zero, we can edit the conditional probability function over this set so that we get a probability distribution everywhere.

Regular conditional probabilities exist on almost every space encountered in practice (for instance, they exist if  $\Sigma$  is the Borel algebra on a *Lusin space*  $\Omega$ , that is, a space homeomorphic to a Borel subset of a compact metric space). (TODO: PROVE THIS).

**Example** (Halmos, Dieudonné, Andersen, Jessen). Consider the probability space  $[0, 1]$  with the standard Borel  $\sigma$  algebra and Lebesgue measure  $\mu$ . Using the axiom of choice, construct a set  $A$  with inner Lebesgue measure 0 and outer Lebesgue measure 1 (so  $A^c$  has outer Lebesgue measure 1 as well). Let  $\Sigma$  be the  $\sigma$  algebra generated from Borel sets and  $A$ . Then a typical element of  $\Sigma$  can be written in the form

$$B = (A \cap E) \cup (A^c \cap F)$$

where  $E$  and  $F$  are Borel sets. It follows then that  $\mu^*(B \cap A) = \mu(E)$ , and  $\mu^*(B \cap A^c) = \mu(F)$ . We can therefore define a probability measure on  $\Sigma$  by setting

$$\mathbf{P}(B) = \frac{\mu^*(B \cap A) + \mu^*(B^c \cap A)}{2} = \frac{\mu(E) + \mu(F)}{2}$$

We have essentially hid ‘two copies’ of  $[0, 1]$  in itself. Assume that we have a conditional probability measure for  $\mathbf{P}$  over Borel sets. If  $B \in \Sigma$ , and  $E$  is Borel measurable, then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_E \mathbf{P}(A \cap B | B[0, 1]) d\mathbf{P} &= \mathbf{P}(A \cap E \cap B) \\ &= \frac{\mu^*(A \cap E \cap B)}{2} = \frac{\mu^*(E \cap B)}{2} = \int_E \frac{\chi_B}{2} d\mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\mathbf{P}(A \cap B | B[0, 1]) = \chi_B/2$  almost surely for each set  $B$ . Since  $B[0, 1]$  is generated by a countable  $\pi$  system, and the maps  $B \mapsto \mathbf{P}(A \cap B | \Sigma)(\omega)$ ,  $B \mapsto$



$\chi_B(\omega)$  are both measures for every  $\omega$ , we have that  $\mathbf{P}(A \cap B|B[0,1])(\omega) = \chi_B(\omega)/2$  for every Borel set  $B$  if and only if  $\mathbf{P}(A \cap B|B[0,1])(\omega) = \chi_B(\omega)/2$  for every element in the  $\pi$  system, and so we conclude

$$J = \left\{ \omega : \mathbf{P}(A \cap B|B[0,1])(\omega) = \frac{\chi_B(\omega)}{2} \text{ for all Borel } B \right\}$$

is also Borel, and  $\mathbf{P}(J) = 1$ , since it is the countable intersection of probability one sets. This means that we may ‘plug  $J$  into itself’, ala Russell’s paradox, so we conclude if  $\omega \in J$ , then  $J - \{\omega\}$  is also Borel, and so

$$\mathbf{P}(A \cap J|B[0,1])(\omega) = \frac{\chi_J(\omega)}{2} \neq \frac{\chi_{J-\{\omega\}}(\omega)}{2} = \mathbf{P}(A \cap [J - \{\omega\}]|B[0,1])(\omega)$$

so that  $A \cap J \neq A \cap [J - \{\omega\}]$ . This means  $\omega \in A$ , so  $J \subset A$ . But  $A$  has inner Lebesgue measure zero, whereas  $J$  has measure 1, which is impossible. Thus the conditional probability could never exist in the first place.

## 12.6 Independence and Conditional Expectation

We know that a series of random variables  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  is independent if

$$\mathbf{P}(X_1 \in A_1, \dots, X_n \in A_n) = \mathbf{P}(X_1 \in A_1) \dots \mathbf{P}(X_n \in A_n)$$

for any Borel set  $A_1, \dots, A_n$ . This essentially means that the information in each random variables  $X_k$  does not give any information about the other random variables. In this form, there seems there should be an obvious extension to  $\sigma$  algebras. We say a family of sigma algebras  $\Sigma_1, \dots, \Sigma_n$  is independent if

$$\mathbf{P}(A_1 \cap \dots \cap A_n) = \mathbf{P}(A_1) \dots \mathbf{P}(A_n)$$

if  $A_1 \in \Sigma_1, \dots, A_n \in \Sigma_n$ , and an infinite family is independent if every finite family is independent. If  $\Sigma$  contains no relevant information to  $X$ , then  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma)$  should essentially have no extra information to predict  $X$ , so we would have to conclude  $\mathbf{E}(X|\Sigma) = \mathbf{E}(X)$ . We prove this in a more general form below.

**Theorem 12.6.** *If  $\Sigma$  is independent of  $X$ , then  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Sigma] = \mathbf{E}[X]$ .*

*Proof.* If  $X = \chi_A$ , then  $A$  is independent of any set in  $\Sigma$ , and so for any  $B \in \Sigma$ ,

$$\int_B \mathbf{P}(A) = \mathbf{P}(A)\mathbf{P}(B) = \mathbf{P}(A \cap B) = \int_B \chi_A = \int_B \mathbf{P}(A|\Sigma)$$

This means  $\mathbf{P}(A) = \mathbf{P}(A|\Sigma)$ . By linearity, the equation holds if  $X$  is any simple function. If  $X$  is positive, we can take limits, and then we can just let  $X = X^+ - X^-$  to get the general result.  $\square$

**Corollary 12.7.** *If  $\Sigma$  is independent of  $\sigma(\sigma(X), \Delta)$ , then*

$$\mathbf{E}[X|\sigma(\Sigma, \Delta)] = \mathbf{E}[X|\Delta]$$

*Proof.* If  $A \in \Delta$ , and  $B \in \Sigma$ , then  $X\chi_A$  is independent of  $\Sigma$ , and so by the last theorem,

$$\int_{A \cap B} X = \int_B X\chi_A = \int_B \mathbf{E}[X\chi_A] = \mathbf{P}(B)\mathbf{E}[X\chi_A]$$

Now  $\mathbf{E}[X|\Delta]\chi_A$  is also independent of  $\Sigma$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{A \cap B} \mathbf{E}[X|\Delta] &= \int_B \mathbf{E}[X|\Delta]\chi_A = \mathbf{P}(B)\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}[X|\Delta]\chi_A) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(B)\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}[X\chi_A|\Delta]) = \mathbf{P}(B)\mathbf{E}[X\chi_A] \end{aligned}$$

It follows by equating these two equations that  $\mathbf{E}[X|\sigma(\Sigma, \Delta)] = \mathbf{E}[X|\Delta]$ .  $\square$

**Example.** Consider a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables  $X_1, X_2, \dots$ , and consider the partial sums  $S_n$ . Given that we know  $S_n$ , the best guess of each  $X_i$  should be  $n^{-1}S_n$ . Define

$$\Sigma_n = \sigma(S_n, S_{n+1}, \dots) = \sigma(S_n, X_{n+1}, \dots)$$

Note that  $X_{n+1}, X_{n+2}, \dots$  is independent of  $X_i, S_n$ , so  $\mathbf{E}[X_i|\Sigma_n] = \mathbf{E}[X_i|S_n]$ . But if  $F$  is the common distribution of each  $X_i$ , then for any set  $A = \{S_n \in B\}$ , where  $B$  is Borel, then  $X(A)$  is symmetric in each variable (because the sum is symmetric), and so

$$\int_A X_i d\mathbf{P} = \int_{X(A)} x_i dF(x_1) \dots dF(x_n) = \int_{X(A)} x_j dF(x_1) \dots dF(x_n) = \int_A X_j d\mathbf{P}$$

so  $\mathbf{E}(X_i|S_n) = \mathbf{E}(X_j|S_n)$ . Now, using the fact that  $S_n = \sum \mathbf{E}(X_i|S_n) = n\mathbf{E}(X_i|S_n)$ , we see that  $\mathbf{E}(X_i|S_n) = S_n/n$ . This calculation leads to a very nice proof of the strong law of large numbers in the theory of discrete martingales, as we will find in the next chapter.

# Chapter 13

## Appendix: Uniform Integrability

Uniform integrability provides stronger conditions on controlling convergence in the  $L^1$  norm. For  $p > 1$ , inequalities often have ‘smoothing’ properties that are not apparent for the  $p = 1$  case, so uniform integrability provides particular techniques to help us. We start with a basic result in measure theory, specialized to probabilistic language.

**Lemma 13.1.** *If  $X \in L^1(\Omega)$  is a random variable, then for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there is  $\delta > 0$  such that for any event  $E$  with  $\mathbf{P}(E) \leq \delta$ ,*

$$\int_E |X| < \varepsilon$$

*Proof.* Suppose that there exists some  $\varepsilon$ , and events  $E_1, E_2, \dots$  with  $\mathbf{P}(E_k) \leq 1/2^k$  but with

$$\int_{E_k} |X| \geq \varepsilon$$

By taking successive unions, we may assume the  $E_i$  are a decreasing family of sets, and then

$$\int_{\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} E_k} |X| = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{E_k} |X| \geq \varepsilon$$

and  $\mathbf{P}(\bigcap E_k) = 0$ , which is impossible. □

**Corollary 13.2.** *If  $X \in L^1(\Omega)$ , and  $\varepsilon > 0$ , then there is  $K \in [0, \infty)$  with*

$$\int_{|X| > K} |X| < \varepsilon$$

A family of random variables  $\{X_\alpha\}$  is called **uniformly integrable** if given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there is  $K \in [0, \infty)$  such that

$$\int_{|X_\alpha| > K} |X_\alpha| < \varepsilon$$

so that we can uniformly control the integral of  $X_\alpha$  over large sets. We note that

$$\mathbf{E}|X_\alpha| = \int_{|X_\alpha| > K} |X_\alpha| + \int_{|X_\alpha| \leq K} |X_\alpha| \leq \varepsilon + K$$

so a family of uniformly integrable random variables is automatically in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , and *bounded* in  $L^1(\Omega)$ . However, a family of random variables bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$  is *not* necessarily uniformly integrable.

**Example.** Let  $\Omega$  be  $[0, 1]$  together with the Lebesgue measure. Let  $E_n = (0, 1/n)$ , and set  $X_n = n\chi_{E_n}$ . Then the  $X_n$  are bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , but for  $n \geq K$ ,

$$\int_{X_n > K} X_n = 1$$

and so the random variables are not uniformly integrable.

There are two simple conditions that guarantee random variables are uniformly integrable.

**Theorem 13.3.** Suppose that  $\{X_\alpha\}$  is a class of random variables bounded in  $L^p$  for  $p > 1$ , then  $\{X_\alpha\}$  is uniformly integrable.

*Proof.* There is some  $A \in [0, \infty)$  such that

$$\mathbf{E}|X_\alpha|^p < A$$

Applying Hölder's inequality, we conclude

$$\int_{|X_\alpha| > K} |X_\alpha| \leq \int_{|X_\alpha| > K} \frac{|X_\alpha|^p}{K^{p-1}} \leq \frac{A}{K^{p-1}}$$

This is a uniform bound, and we may let  $K \rightarrow \infty$  to let the bound go to zero. Thus the family  $\{X_\alpha\}$  is uniformly integrable.  $\square$

**Corollary 13.4.** If  $|X_\alpha| \leq Y$  is a uniform bound over a family  $\{X_\alpha\}$  of random variables, where  $Y \in L^1(\Omega)$ , then  $\{X_\alpha\}$  is uniformly integrable.

*Proof.* We find

$$\int_{|X_\alpha| > K} |X_\alpha| \leq \int_{|X_\alpha| > K} Y \leq \int_{Y > K} Y$$

and as  $K \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(Y > K) \rightarrow 0$ , and we can apply the continuity result to conclude that

$$\int_{Y > K} Y \rightarrow 0$$

and so we obtain a uniform bound.  $\square$

The uniform integrability of a dominated family of random variables is precisely the property which makes the dominated convergence theorem work. We shall see that uniform integrability allows for a much more general convergence result, which is the most powerful result available for  $L^1$  convergence.

We recall that a sequence  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  of random variables **converges in probability** to a random variable  $X$  if, for every  $\varepsilon$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0$ . If  $X_i \rightarrow X$  almost surely, then  $X_i \rightarrow X$  in probability, because we can apply the reverse Fatou lemma to conclude

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \mathbf{P}\left(\liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} |X_n - X| > \varepsilon\right) \\ &= \mathbf{P}(\limsup\{|X_n - X| > \varepsilon\}) \geq \limsup \mathbf{P}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon) \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\mathbf{P}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon) \rightarrow 0$ . The bounded convergence theorem links  $L^1$  convergence to convergence in probability using uniform integrability.

**Theorem 13.5.** *If  $X_n$  is a sequence of bounded random variable, which tend to a random variable  $X$  in probability. Then  $X_n \rightarrow X$  in the  $L^1$  norm.*

*Proof.* Let us begin by proving that if  $|X_n| \leq K$ , then  $|X| \leq K$  almost surely. This follows because for any  $k$ ,

$$\mathbf{P}(|X| > K + 1/k) \leq \mathbf{P}(|X - X_n| > 1/k) \rightarrow 0$$

so  $\mathbf{P}(|X| > K + 1/k) = 0$ , and letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$  gives  $\mathbf{P}(|X| > K) = 0$ . Let  $\varepsilon > 0$  be given. Then if we choose  $n$  large enough that

$$\mathbf{P}(|X_n - X| > \varepsilon) \leq \varepsilon$$

then

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{E}|X_n - X| &= \int_{|X_n - X| > \varepsilon} |X_n - X| + \int_{|X_n - X| \leq \varepsilon} |X_n - X| \\ &\leq 2K\varepsilon + \varepsilon\end{aligned}$$

we can then let  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  to obtain  $L^1$  convergence.  $\square$

All this discussion concludes with a sufficient condition for  $L^1$  convergence.

**Theorem 13.6.** *Let  $X_n$  be a sequence of integrable random variables, and  $X$  is another integrable random variable. Then  $X_n \rightarrow X$  in the  $L^1$  norm if and only if  $X_n \rightarrow X$  in probability, and  $\{X_n\}$  is uniformly integrable.*

*Proof.* Fix  $K > 0$ , and consider

$$f_K(x) = \begin{cases} K & : x > K \\ x & : |x| \leq K \\ -K & : x < -K \end{cases}$$

Then for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we can choose  $K$  such that  $\|f_K(X_n) - X_n\|_1 \leq \varepsilon$ ,  $\|f_K(X) - X\|_1 \leq \varepsilon$  uniformly across  $n$  (adding a single variable to a uniformly integrable random variable keeps it uniformly integrable). But it is easy to see that  $f_K(X_n) \rightarrow f_K(X)$  in probability also, so by the bounded dominated convergence theorem, we conclude that  $\|f_K(X_n) - f_K(X)\| \rightarrow 0$ . A triangle inequality result gives the general result because the behaviour of  $X$  for large values is bounded by the uniform integrability.

To verify the reverse condition, note that if  $\mathbf{E}|X_n - X| \rightarrow 0$ , then Markov's inequality gives

$$\mathbf{P}(|X_n - X| \geq K) \leq \frac{\mathbf{E}|X_n - X|}{K} \rightarrow 0$$

to obtain uniform integrability, note that for each  $n$ ,  $\{X_1, \dots, X_n, X\}$  is uniformly integrable, then for each  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there is  $\delta$  such that if  $\mathbf{P}(E < \delta)$ ,

$$\int_E |X_n| < \varepsilon \quad \int_E |X| < \varepsilon$$

Since the entire set of  $X_n$  are bounded in  $L^1(\Omega)$ , we can choose  $K$  such that  $\sup \mathbf{E}|X_k| < \delta K$ , and then for  $m > n$ ,  $\mathbf{P}(|X_m - X| > K) < \delta$ , and so

$$\int_{|X_m| > K} |X_m| \leq \int_{|X_m| > K} |X| + \mathbf{E}|X - X_m| \leq 2\varepsilon$$

where we assume we have chosen  $n$  large enough that  $\mathbf{E}|X - X_m| \leq \varepsilon$ . The fact that for  $m \leq n$ ,

$$\int_{|X_m| > K} |X_m| \leq \varepsilon$$

follows from uniform integrability of the family  $\{X, X_1, \dots, X_n\}$ , so we have shown the entire infinite sequence is uniformly integrable.  $\square$